MY20 EQ Equinox
Owner's Manual

General Motors Holden Australia NSC Pty Ltd, ABN 60 603 486 933,
Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

Holden is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.
Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92511033
September 2019
(MY20 EQ Equinox. Print 1)

© 2019 General Motors Holden Australia NSC Pty Ltd.
© 2019 Holden New Zealand Ltd.
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from General Motors Holden Australia NSC Pty Ltd, ABN 60 603 486 933 (Australia) or Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Contents

Introduction 2
Keys, Doors, and Windows 7
Seats and Restraints 32
Storage 59
Instruments and Controls 66
Lighting 104
Infotainment System 111
Climate Controls 163
Driving and Operating 170
Vehicle Care 221
Service and Maintenance 283
Technical Data 285
Customer Information 291
Index 296

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current EQ Equinox vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Introduction

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant.**
- The In Brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *154* or *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *291*.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

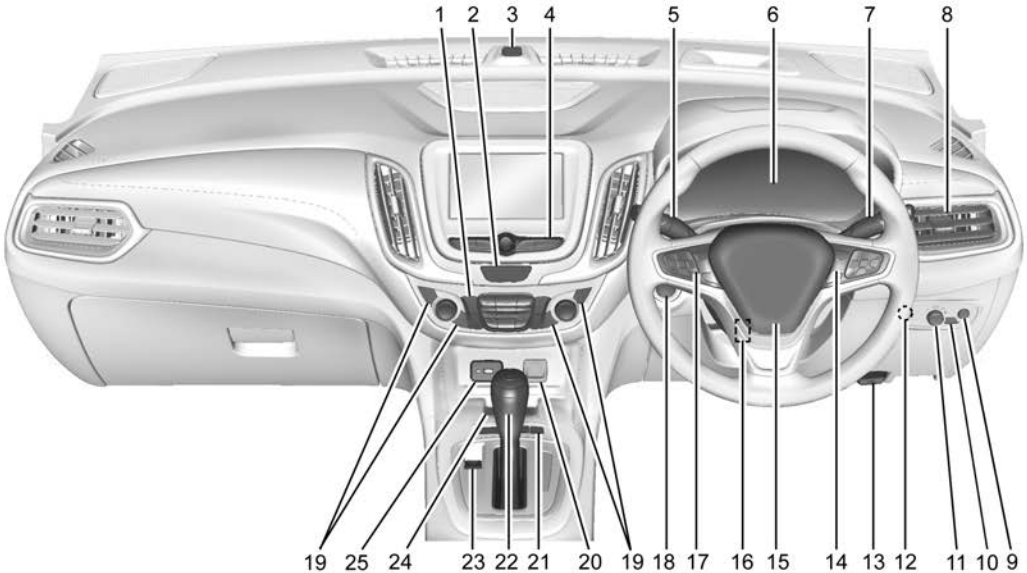
Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.

This indicates 'see page'.

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *163*.

   Dual Automatic Climate Control System ⇨ *165*.

2. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *107*.
3. Light Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *106*.
4. Infotainment System. See *Overview* ⇨ *111*.
5. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *69*.
6. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *78*.

   Driver Information Centre (DIC) Display. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *91*.

7. Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *108*.

   High Beam Assist. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *104*.

8. *Air Vents* ⇨ *169*.
9. *Headlamp Leveling Control* ⇨ *107*.
10. *Fog Lamps* ⇨ *108*.
11. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *104*.
12. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *109* (Out of View).
13. Bonnet Release. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *224*.
14. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *67*.

    Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ *186*.

15. *Horn* ⇨ *69*.
16. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *67* (Out of View).
17. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *189*.

    Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *204*.

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *212*.

    Heated Steering Wheel ⇨ *68*.

18. ENGINE START/STOP Button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *174*.
19. *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40*.
20. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *72*.
21. *Parking Assist* ⇨ *198*.

    Advanced Parking Assist ⇨ *202*.

    Hill Descent Control (HDC) ⇨ *188*.

    All-Wheel Drive ⇨ *182*.

22. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *179*.
23. *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *183*.
24. *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *75*.
25. *USB Port* ⇨ *121*.

    Auxiliary Jack ⇨ *125*.

✍ NOTES

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 7
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 8
Remote Vehicle Start 12
Door Locks 13
Delayed Locking 15
Automatic Door Locks 15
Lockout Protection 16
Safety Locks 16

Doors
Liftgate 17

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Alarm System 22
Steering Column Lock 23
Immobiliser Operation 24

Exterior Mirrors
Power Mirrors 25
Folding Mirrors 26
Heated Mirrors 26

Interior Mirrors
Interior Rear view Mirrors 27
Manual Rear View Mirror 27
Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror 27

Windows
Windows 27
Power Windows 27
Sun Visors 29

Roof
Sunroof 29

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.

A mechanical key that is part of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter can be used in an emergency for the driver's door lock. See “Emergency Door Key Lock Cylinder Access” in *Door Locks* ⇨ *13*.



Remove the mechanical key by pressing the button on the side of the RKE transmitter near the bottom and pull the key out. Never pull the key out without pressing the button.

See your dealer if a new transmitter is needed.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

If there is a decrease in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The keyless entry system allows vehicle entry when the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the vehicle. See “Keyless Entry Operation” later in this section.

The buttons on the RKE transmitter may operate up to 60 m from the vehicle. Conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System ⇨ 8*.



With Remote Start and Power Liftgate Shown

The following may be available:

: Press to lock all doors, the liftgate and the fuel filler door. The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound on the second press to indicate locking.

If the driver door is open when is pressed and Open Door Anti Lockout is enabled through vehicle personalisation, all doors will lock and then the driver door will immediately unlock. If a passenger

door is open when is pressed, all doors lock. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*

Pressing also arms the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *22*.

: Press to unlock the driver door and the fuel filler door. Press again within five seconds to unlock all doors and the liftgate. The RKE transmitter can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first button press. The turn signal indicators may flash to indicate that unlocking has occurred. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Pressing also disarms the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *22*.

If equipped, press and hold for several seconds to open the windows. Windows will not operate unless Remote Window Operation is enabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

: Press twice quickly to open or close the power liftgate, if equipped. Press again to stop the power liftgate.

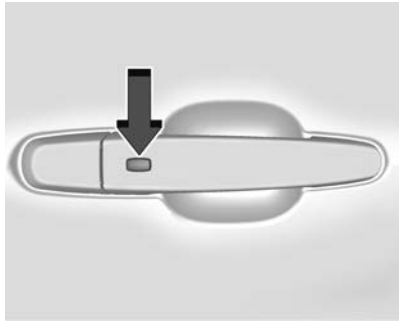
: Remote vehicle start, if equipped. Allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *12*.

Keyless Entry Operation

With the keyless entry system, you can lock and unlock the doors and access the liftgate without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket or purse, etc. The RKE transmitter should be within 1 m of the liftgate or door being opened.

The fuel door will also lock/unlock at this time.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking



When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on a door handle will unlock the doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause the doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The doors are unlocked.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Keyless entry can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock press, or the driver's door on

the first press and then all doors on a second press. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Passive Locking

The vehicle can lock several seconds after all doors are closed if the ignition is off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed or none remain in the interior.

The fuel filler door will also lock.

If other electronic devices interfere with the RKE transmitter signal, the vehicle may not detect the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle. If passive locking is enabled, the doors may lock with the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle. Do not leave the RKE transmitter in an unattended vehicle.

To customise the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see “Remote Lock, Unlock and Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Temporary Disable of Passive Locking

Temporarily disable passive locking by pressing and holding on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

When the ignition is turned off and an RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle, the horn will chirp three times after all doors are closed. To turn on or off, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Remote No Longer in Vehicle Alert

If the ignition is on with a door open, and then all doors are closed, the vehicle will check for RKE transmitters inside. If an RKE transmitter is not detected, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) may display **No Remote Detected** and the horn may chirp three times. This occurs only once each time the vehicle is driven.

Keyless Liftgate Opening

When the doors are locked, press the touch pad on the liftgate handle to open the liftgate if the RKE transmitter is within 1 m.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to this vehicle will work. Your vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it.

If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed by your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed at the same time. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new and existing transmitters are programmed.

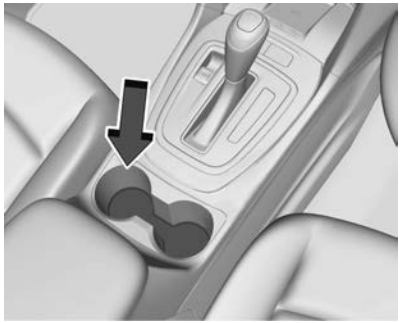
Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

When the vehicle is started, if the RKE transmitter battery is weak, the DIC may display the following messages:

- **No Remote Detected**, or
- **No Remote Key Was Detected. Place Key In Transmitter Pocket Then Start Your Vehicle**.

The **Replace Battery In Remote Key** message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:



1. Place the RKE transmitter in the left-hand centre console cup holder.
2. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), depress the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

   Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

Replace the RKE transmitter battery if the DIC displays **Replace Battery In Remote Key**.

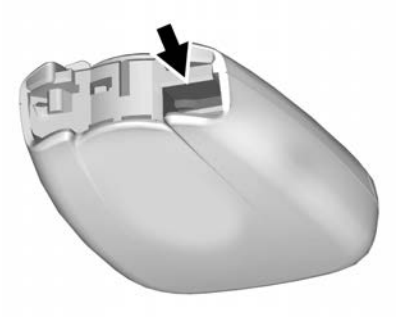
Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

The battery is not rechargeable. To replace the battery:



1. Press the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key.



2. Separate the two halves of the transmitter using a flat tool inserted into the area near the key slot.



3. Remove the battery by pushing on the battery and sliding it toward the bottom of the transmitter.
4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing the back cover. Push the battery down until it is held in place. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Snap the battery cover back on to the transmitter.
6. Reinsert the mechanical key.

Remote Vehicle Start

The vehicle may have this feature that allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle.

: This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear demist indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If the vehicle has heated and ventilated front seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40*.

Certain conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *8*.

Note

Do not use the remote vehicle start feature if the vehicle is low on fuel.

Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. The turn signal lamps flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

   The park lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The vehicle's doors will be locked.

3. Unlock the vehicle, press the brake pedal and the ENGINE START/STOP button before driving.

The engine will shut off after 15 minutes unless a run time extension is performed, or the ignition is turned on.

Extending Engine Run Time

For a 15 minute extension, after 30 seconds repeat Steps 1 and 2 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

When the remote start is extended, the second 15 minutes will be added.

For example, if the engine has been running for 15 minutes, and 15 minutes are added, the engine will run for a total of 30 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts or a start with an extension are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle must be started and then turned off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start and turn off the engine, do one of the following:

- Press and hold ⟲ until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Press the ENGINE START/STOP button twice.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

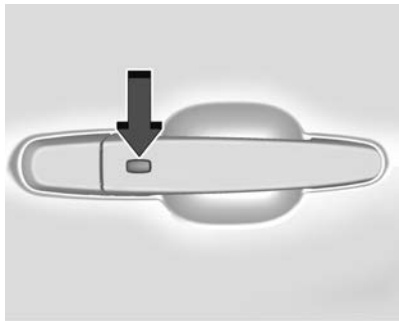
The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- A transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The ignition is on.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts or a start with an extension have already been used.

Door Locks

To lock or unlock the doors from the outside:

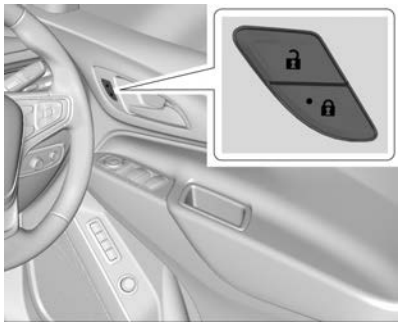
- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.



- Press the button on a door handle. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

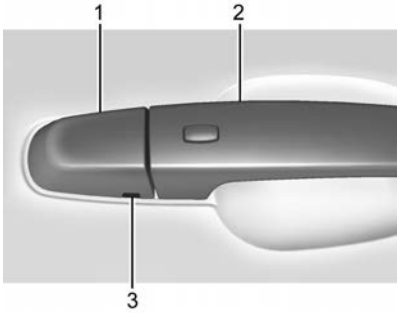
- Use the mechanical key in the driver door. The key lock cylinder is covered with a cap. See “Emergency Door Key Lock Cylinder Access” further in this Section.

To lock or unlock the doors from the inside:



- Press or on the door lock switch to lock or unlock the doors. The indicator light will come on when the doors are locked.
- Push down on the door lock knob to lock a door.
- Pull the door handle once to unlock the door. Pull the handle again to unlatch it.

Emergency Door Key Lock Cylinder Access



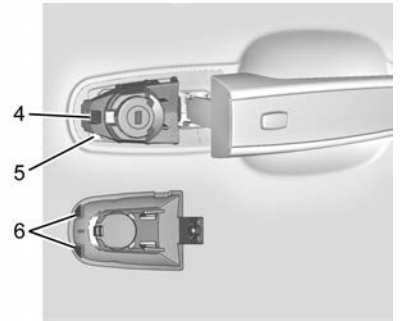
In a situation such as the RKE transmitter battery is depleted or there is a fault, the door can be unlocked / locked with the mechanical key.

To access the driver door key lock cylinder:

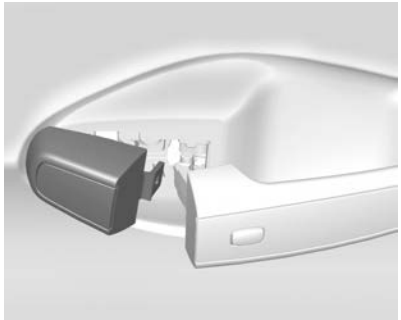
1. Pull the door handle (2) to the open position and hold it open until cap removal is complete.
2. Insert the key into the slot (3) on the bottom of the cap (1) and lift the key upward.
3. Move the cap rearward and remove.
4. Use the key in the cylinder.

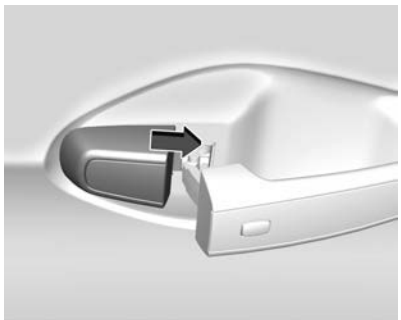
To replace the cap:

1. Pull the door handle to the open position and hold it open until cap installation is complete.



2. Insert the two tabs (6) at the back of the cap between the seal (5) and the metal base (4).





3. Slide the cap forward and press the forward edge to install the cap in place.
4. Release the door handle.
5. Check the cap is secure.

Free-Turning Locks

The door key lock cylinder turns freely when either the wrong key is used, or the correct key is not fully inserted. The free-turning door lock feature prevents the lock from being forced open. To reset the lock, turn it to the vertical position with the correct key fully inserted. Remove the key and insert it again. If this does not reset the lock, turn the key halfway around in the cylinder and repeat the reset procedure.

Delayed Locking

This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

Delayed locking can only be turned on when the Open Door Anti-Lockout feature has been turned off.

When is pressed on the power door lock switch with the door open, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

The doors will then lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five-second timer will reset once all the doors are closed again.

Press on the door lock switch again, or press on the RKE transmitter, to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

Delayed locking can be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle is programmed so that when the doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park), the doors will lock.

If a vehicle door is unlocked and then opened and closed, the doors will relock either when your foot is removed from the brake or the vehicle speed becomes faster than 13 km/h.

To unlock the doors:

- Press on the power door lock switch.
- Shift into P (Park).

Automatic door locking can be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Lockout Protection

If the ignition is on or in Accessory mode and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the ignition is off and locking is requested while a door is open, when all doors are closed the vehicle will check for RKE transmitters inside. If an RKE transmitter is detected and the number of RKE transmitters inside has not reduced, the driver door will unlock and the horn will chirp three times.

Lockout Protection can be manually overridden by pressing and holding on the power door lock switch.

Open Door Anti Lockout

If Open Door Anti Lockout is turned on and the ignition is off, the driver door is open, and locking is requested, all the doors will lock and the driver door will remain unlocked. The Open Door Anti Lockout feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Safety Locks

Child Safety Locks



The rear door child safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

The safety lock is on the inside edge of the rear doors. To enable the safety lock:

1. Unlock the doors and open the rear door.
2. Move the lever to the Lock position.
3. Close the door.

4. Do the same for the other rear door if desired.

To open a rear door when the safety lock is on:

1. Unlock the doors.
2. Open the door from the outside.

When the child safety lock is enabled, it is not possible to open the rear door from the inside. Cancel the safety locks to enable the doors to be opened from the inside.

To cancel the safety lock:

1. Unlock the doors and open the rear door from the outside.
2. Move the lever to the Unlock position. Do the same for the other door as required.

Doors

Liftgate

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate open or ajar. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate open or ajar:

- Close all windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on and under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems”.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *179*.

Caution

To avoid damage to the liftgate or liftgate glass, make sure the area above and behind the liftgate is clear before opening it.

Manual Liftgate

To unlock the liftgate, press on the driver's door lock switch, or press on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter twice within five seconds, or have the RKE transmitter within 1 m or the rear of the vehicle. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.



To open the liftgate, press the touch pad under the liftgate handle and lift up.

To lower and close the liftgate, use the pull cup on the bottom inside edge.

Do not press the touch pad while closing the liftgate as this may cause the liftgate to be unlatched.

The liftgate has an electric latch. If the battery is disconnected or has low voltage, the liftgate will not open. The liftgate will resume operation when the battery is reconnected and charged.

Always close the liftgate before driving.

Power Liftgate Operation

⚠ Warning

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of the power liftgate. Make sure there is no one in the way of the liftgate as it is opening and closing.

Caution

Driving with an open and unsecured liftgate may result in damage to the power liftgate components.



The power liftgate switch is on the driver door. The vehicle must be in P (Park). The tail lamps flash when the power liftgate moves.

The modes are:

- MAX: Opens to maximum height.
- 3/4: Opens to a reduced height that can be set from 3/4 to fully open. Use this mode to prevent the liftgate from opening into overhead obstructions such as a garage door or roof-mounted cargo. The liftgate can be manually opened all the way.
- OFF: Opens manually only.

To open the power liftgate, first select MAX or 3/4 mode using the switch on the driver's door. Then either:

- Press twice quickly on the RKE transmitter until the liftgate moves.
- Press on the driver's door. The driver's door must be unlocked.
- Press the touch pad on the underside of the liftgate handle. If the doors are locked, have the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the rear of the vehicle.

To close the power liftgate, either:



- Press on the bottom of the liftgate next to the pull cup.
- Press twice quickly on the RKE transmitter until the liftgate moves.
- Press on the driver's door.

The touch pad on the liftgate handle cannot be used to close the liftgate.

Press any liftgate button or the touch pad while the liftgate is moving to stop it. Pressing again restarts the operation in the reverse direction.

Caution

Manually forcing the liftgate to open or close during a power cycle can damage the vehicle. Allow the power cycle to complete.

The power liftgate may be temporarily disabled under extreme low temperatures, or after repeated power cycling over a short period of time. If this occurs, the liftgate can still be operated manually.

If the transmission is shifted out of P (Park) while the power function is in progress, the liftgate operation will continue to completion. If the vehicle is accelerated before the liftgate has completed moving, the liftgate may stop or reverse direction. Make sure the liftgate is closed and latched before driving.

Falling Liftgate Detection

If the power liftgate automatically closes after a power opening cycle, it indicates the system is reacting to

excess weight on the liftgate or a possible support strut failure.
A repetitive chime will sound while the falling liftgate detection feature is operating. Remove any excess weight. If the liftgate continues to automatically close after opening, see your dealer for service before using the power liftgate.

Interfering with the power liftgate motion or manually closing the liftgate too quickly after power opening may resemble a support strut failure. This could also activate the falling liftgate detection feature. Allow the liftgate to complete its operation and wait a few seconds before manually closing the liftgate.

Obstacle Detection Features

If the liftgate encounters an obstacle during a power open or close cycle, the liftgate will automatically reverse direction and move a short distance away from the obstacle. After removing the obstruction, the power liftgate operation can be used again. If the liftgate encounters multiple obstacles on the same power cycle, the power function will deactivate. After removing the obstructions, manually close the liftgate which will allow normal power operation functions to resume.

If the vehicle is locked while the liftgate is closing, and an obstacle is encountered that prevents the liftgate from completely closing, the horn will sound as an alert that the liftgate did not close.

Pinch sensors are on the side edges of the liftgate. If an object is caught between the liftgate and the vehicle and presses against a sensor, the liftgate will reverse direction and then stop. The liftgate will remain open until it is activated again or closed manually.

Setting the 3/4 Mode

To change the position the liftgate stops at when opening:

1. Select 3/4 mode and power open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement at the desired height by pressing any liftgate button. Manually adjust the liftgate position if required.
3. Press and hold  next to the pull cup on the bottom inside edge of the liftgate until the turn signals flash and a beep sounds. This indicates the setting has been recorded.

Note
The liftgate cannot be set below a minimum programmable height.
If there is no light flash or sound, then the height adjustment may be too low.

4. Close and reopen the liftgate to check it stops at the desired position. Repeat the above steps to readjust if required.

Manual Operation

Select OFF to manually operate the liftgate.

Caution

Attempting to move the liftgate too quickly and with excessive force may result in damage to the vehicle.

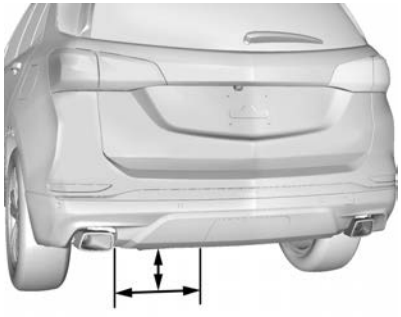
Operate the liftgate manually with a smooth motion and moderate speed. The system includes a feature which limits the manual closing speed to protect the components.

Hands-Free Operation

If equipped, the liftgate may be operated with a kicking motion under the rear bumper between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate.

The liftgate will not operate if the RKE transmitter is not within 1 m.

The hands-free feature will not work while the liftgate is moving. To stop the liftgate while in motion use one of the liftgate buttons.



Kick Zone

The 'kick zone' is under the rear bumper, between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate. To operate the hands-free liftgate, move your foot towards the 'kick zone' under the rear bumper and then pull it back in one swift motion

Caution

Splashing water may cause the liftgate to open. Keep the RKE transmitter away from the rear bumper detection area or turn the

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

liftgate mode to OFF when cleaning or working near the rear bumper to avoid accidental opening.

- Do not sweep your foot side to side.
- Do not keep your foot under the bumper; the liftgate will not activate.
- Do not touch the liftgate until it has stopped moving.
- This feature may be temporarily disabled under some conditions. If the liftgate does not respond to the kick, open or close the liftgate by another method or start the vehicle. The feature will be re-enabled.

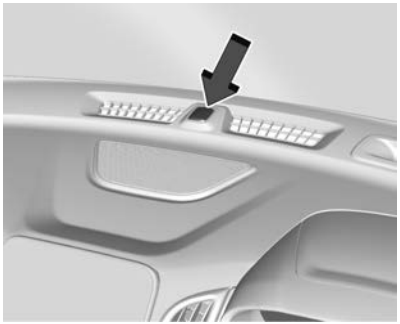
When closing the liftgate using this feature, there will be a short delay. The tail lamps will flash and a chime will sound. Step away from the liftgate before it starts moving.

Settings for the hands-free liftgate operation can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windscreen, indicates the status of the system:

Off : Alarm system is disarmed.

On Solid : Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

Fast Flash : Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the bonnet, or the liftgate is open.

Slow Flash : Alarm system is armed.

Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle:
   - Using the RKE transmitter.
   - Pressing the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating.
   Pressing on the RKE transmitter a second time will bypass the 30 second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the mechanical key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter or pressing a button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing on the RKE transmitter, or pressing a button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle during the 10 second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

If another door, the bonnet, or the liftgate is opened without first disarming the system, the turn signals will flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorised event.

Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.
- Press the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or press a button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle.

Unlocking the driver door with the mechanical key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If is pressed on the RKE transmitter and the horn chirps and the lights flash three times, an alarm occurred previously while the alarm system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC.

Steering Column Lock

If equipped, the steering column lock is a theft-deterrent device. This feature locks the steering column when the vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened, or when the driver door is opened and then the vehicle is turned off. The steering column unlocks when the vehicle is turned on.

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) may display one of these messages:

- A message to service the steering column lock indicates that an issue has been detected with the column lock feature and the vehicle should be serviced.
- A message that the steering column is locked indicates that the engine is running, but the steering column is still locked. It is normal for the column to be locked during a remote start, but the column should unlock after the brake pedal is pressed and the vehicle is started. No message will display during a remote start.
- A message that the steering wheel must be turned and the vehicle must be started again indicates that the column lock mechanism is bound, the column locking device was unable to unlock the steering column, and the vehicle did not start. If this happens, immediately turn the steering wheel from side to side to unbind the column lock. If this does not unlock the steering column, turn the vehicle off and open the driver door to reset the system. Then turn the vehicle on and immediately turn the steering wheel side to side for about 15 seconds. In some cases, it may take significant force to unbind the column.

To keep the steering column from binding, straighten the front wheels before turning off the vehicle.

Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive immobiliser system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilisation system is disarmed when the ignition is on or in Accessory mode and a valid RKE transmitter is present in the vehicle.

The RKE transmitters are matched to your vehicle. Only a correctly matched RKE transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.



When trying to start the vehicle, the security light may come on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes, and the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Alternatively, try placing the transmitter in the cup holder. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

If the ignition mode will not change with the other transmitter or in the cup-holder, your vehicle needs service.

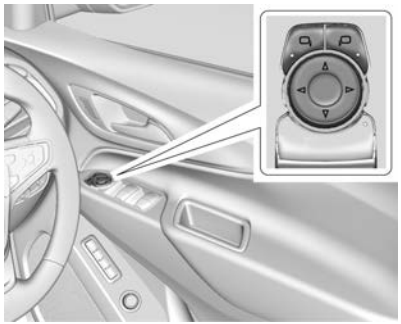
If the ignition does change modes, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer who can service the immobiliser system and have a new RKE transmitter programmed to the vehicle.

It is possible for up to eight transmitters to be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional transmitters, see “Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

Do not leave the RKE transmitter or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Power Mirrors



To adjust each mirror:

1. Press ⧉ or ⧉ to select the driver or passenger side mirror. The indicator light will illuminate.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move the mirror in the desired direction.
3. Adjust each outside mirror so that a little of the vehicle and the area behind it can be seen.
4. Press ⧉ or ⧉ again to deselect the mirror.

Turn Signal Indicator

The vehicle may have a turn signal indicator lamp built into the mirror housing. The turn signal lamp flashes when the indicators or hazard lights are used.

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

The vehicle may have LCA. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *210*.

Side Blind Zone Alert

The vehicle may have Side Blind Zone Alert. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *210*.

⚠ Warning

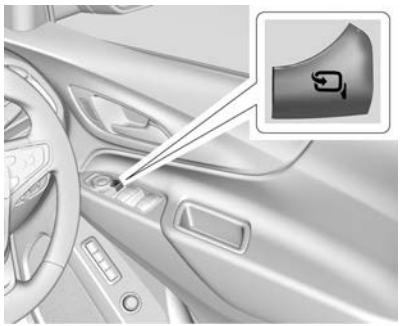
The exterior mirrors are convex shaped to provide a wider view. Objects in this mirror may be closer than they appear.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding Mirrors

The exterior mirrors can be manually folded inward to prevent damage when the vehicle is parked. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position before driving.

Power Folding Mirrors



If equipped, press to power fold the mirrors. Press again to unfold.

Resetting the Power Folding Mirrors

Reset the power folding mirrors if:

- The mirrors are accidentally obstructed while folding.
- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors do not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors vibrate at normal driving speeds.

Fold and unfold the mirrors one time using the mirror controls to reset them to their normal position. A noise may be heard during the resetting of the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

The outside mirrors may automatically unfold when the vehicle is driven above 20 km/h, but can be refolded with the power folding mirror switch.

If the vehicle is driven above 40 km/h, they may automatically unfold and cannot be refolded with the power folding mirror switch.

Heated Mirrors

If equipped, the heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

REAR : This button is on the climate control panel.

See “Rear Window Demister” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *165*.

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rear view Mirrors

Adjust the rear view mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Manual Rear View Mirror

If equipped, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it rearward for night-time use to avoid glare of the headlamps from behind.

Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror

If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

Windows

⚠ Warning

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

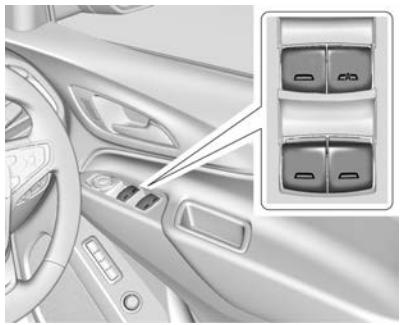
Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.



Power windows can be operated when the ignition is on, in Accessory mode, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *177*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

Auto Up/Down

All windows can be opened without holding the window switch. Press the switch down fully and quickly release to express open the window.

If equipped, pull the window switch up fully and quickly release to express close the window.

Briefly press or pull the window switch in the same direction to stop that window's express movement.

Safety Function

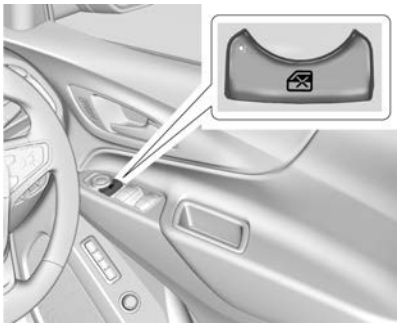
The auto up feature will automatically reverse window movement if it comes in contact with an object. Extreme cold or ice could cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will operate normally after the object or condition is removed.

Safety Function Override

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> If automatic reversal system override is active, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before using automatic reversal system override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

When the engine is on, override the automatic reversal system by pulling and holding the window switch if conditions prevent it from closing.

Child Safety Lockout



This feature stops the rear door passenger window switches from functioning.

Note

Vehicle without electric folding mirrors shown.

- Press to engage the rear window lockout feature. The indicator light is on when engaged.
- Press again to disengage.

Programming the Power Windows

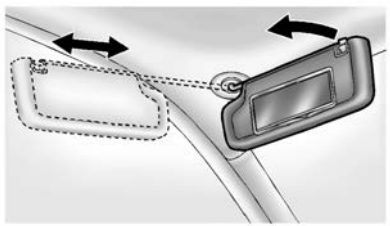
Programming may be necessary if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected or discharged. If the window is unable to express-up, program the window:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn the ignition on or to Accessory mode.
3. Partially open the window to be programmed, then close it and continue to pull the switch briefly after the window has fully closed.
4. Open the window and continue to press the switch briefly after the window has fully opened.

Remote Window Operation

If equipped, this feature allows all the windows to be opened remotely. If enabled in vehicle personalisation, press and hold on the RKE transmitter for several seconds. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare.

If desired, detach the sun visor from the centre mount to pivot to the side window and extend along the rod.

Roof

Sunroof



1. Sunroof Switch
2. Sunshade Switch

If equipped, the sunroof only operates when the ignition is on or in Accessory mode, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *177*.

Sunroof Switch

Vent : From the closed position, press and release to vent the sunroof. Press and release to close the vent.

Express-Open/Express-Close : To express-open the sunroof, press and release once more. Press and release again at any time to stop movement. To express-close the sunroof, press and release. Press and release again at any time to stop movement.

Open/Close (Manual Mode) : To open the sunroof, press and hold until the sunroof reaches the desired position, then release the switch. To close the sunroof, press and hold.

Comfort Stop : The sunroof has a comfort stop feature that stops the sunroof from opening fully. Press and release the rear of to move the sunroof to the partially opened comfort stop position.

Pressing the rear of again will open the sunroof fully. If the sunshade is not fully open when the comfort stop feature is pressed the second time, the sunshade will open fully.

Sunshade Switch

Express-open/Express-close : To express-open the sunshade, press and release. Press and release again at any time to stop movement. To express-close the sunshade, press and release ∨ .

Press and release ∨ again at any time to stop movement.

Open/Close (Manual Mode) : To open the sunshade, press and hold until the sunshade reaches the desired position. To close the sunshade, press and hold ∨ .

When the sunroof is opened, an air deflector will automatically raise. The air deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

Automatic Reversal System

The sunroof/sunshade is equipped with an automatic reversal system that is only active when the sunroof/sunshade is being operated in express-close. If an object is in the path of the sunroof/sunshade while it is express-closing, the reversal system will detect the object, stop, and open the sunroof slightly.

In the event of closing difficulties like frost or other conditions, it is possible to override the reversal system. To override the reversal system, close in manual mode. To stop the movement, release the switch.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also block the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

If water is seen dripping into the water drainage system, this is normal.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 32

Front Seats
Seat Position 35
Seat Adjustment 35
Power Seat Adjustment 36
Lumbar Adjustment 37
Reclining Seat Backs 37
Memory Seats 38
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 40

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 41
Rear Seat Armrest 44
Heated Rear Seats 44

Seat Belts
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 45
Three-Point Seat Belt 45
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 48
Seat Belt Care 48
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 48

Airbag System
Airbag System 49
Front Airbag System 50
Side Airbag System 50
Curtain Airbag System 51
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 52
Notices for Customer Installed Equipment 53
Airbag System Check 53
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 53

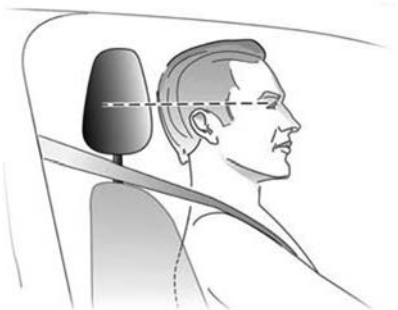
Child Restraints
Older Children 54
Infants and Young Children 54
Child Restraint Systems 55
Where to Put the Restraint 56
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 57
Child Restraint Installation Locations 57
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 58

Head Restraints

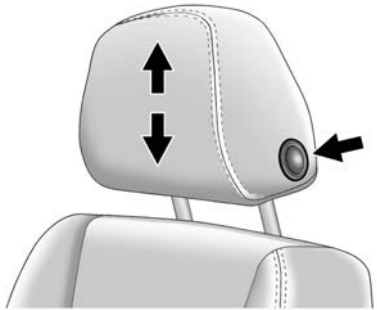
⚠ Warning

This safety feature is not intended as a headrest. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



Front Seats



To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint and pull up or push the head restraint down, and release the button.

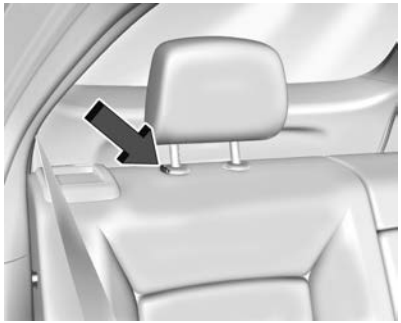
Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to ensure it is locked in place.

The front seat head restraints are not removable.

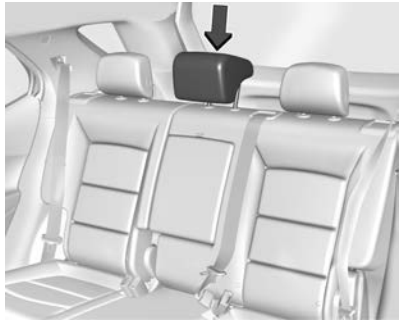
Rear Seats

Rear Head Restraint Adjustment

Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to ensure it is locked in place.



To lower the head restraint, press the button located on the top of the seat back, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to ensure it is locked in place.

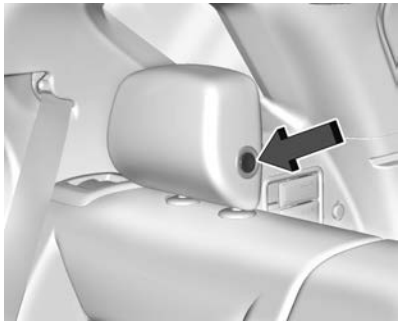


The rear seat head restraint for the centre seating position can be adjusted the same way as the outboard head restraints.

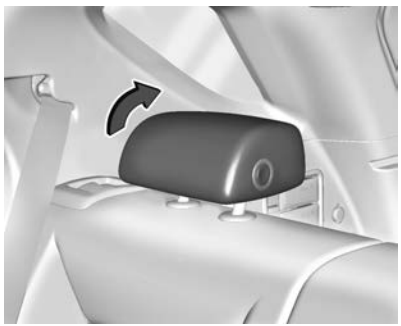
The rear outboard head restraints are not removable.

Folding the Rear Head Restraint

The head restraint can be folded rearward to allow for better visibility when the rear seat is unoccupied.



To fold the head restraint, press the button on the side of the head restraint.



The head restraint will fold rearward automatically.

When an occupant or child restraint is in the seat, always return the head restraint to the full upright position. Pull the head restraint up and forward until it locks into place. Push and pull on the head restraint to ensure it is locked.

Always adjust the head restraint so the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head.

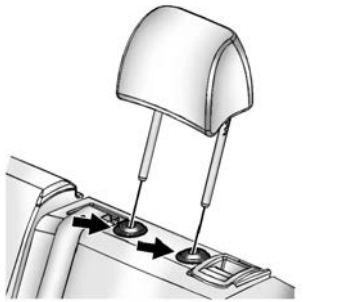
Centre Rear Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation

⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

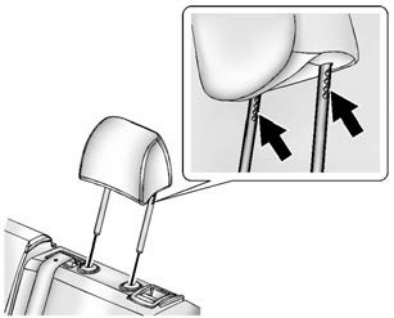
To remove the centre rear head restraint:

1. Partially fold the seat back forward. See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *41* for additional information.



2. Press both buttons on the head restraint posts at the same time and pull up on the head restraint.
3. Store the removed head restraint in a safe location.

To reinstall the head restraint:



1. Insert the head restraint posts into the holes in the top of the seat back. The notches on the posts must face the passenger side of the vehicle.
2. Push the head restraint down.

   If necessary, press the height adjustment release button to further lower the head restraint. See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *41*.
3. Try to move the head restraint to ensure it is locked in place.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.



- Sit centrally in the seat.
- Use the backrest and cushion for support.
- Adjust the seat so that your legs are slightly angled when against the pedals.
- Adjust the backrest angle to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *67*.
- Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel.
- Adjust the head restraint. *Head Restraints* ⇨ *32*.
- Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.



To adjust the seat position:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat cushion to unlock it.
2. Move the seat forward or rearward and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Seat Height Adjuster



Move the lever up or down to raise or lower the seat.

Power Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

The power seats will work with the ignition off. Children could operate the power seats and be injured. Never leave children alone in the vehicle.



To adjust a power seat, if equipped:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.

To adjust the seat back, see *Reclining Seat Backs* ⇨ *37*.

Lumbar Adjustment



If equipped, press and hold the control switch forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.

Reclining Seat Backs

Manual Reclining Seat Backs

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



To recline a manual seat back:

1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seat back to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seat back in place.
3. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

To return the seat back to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seat back, and the seat back will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seat Backs



To adjust a power seat back, if available:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Memory Seats



If equipped, the memory seat function allows two drivers to save and recall their unique seat position for driving the vehicle, and a shared exit position for getting out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Before moving the seat, ensure the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

The SET, 1, 2 and (Exit) buttons are used to manually save and recall memory settings. For seat entry memory recalls, the positions are also linked to RKE transmitter 1 or 2.

If required, to enable seat entry and exit memory, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Identifying Driver Number

To identify the driver number:

1. Start the vehicle with one RKE transmitter in the vehicle. The DIC should display the driver number; e.g. '1'.

   Turn the ignition off and remove the RKE transmitter from the vehicle.
2. Start the vehicle with the other RKE transmitter in the vehicle. The DIC should display the driver number not shown in Step 1, e.g. '2'.

Saving Memory Positions

Read these instructions completely before saving memory positions.

To save preferred driving positions 1 and 2:

1. Turn the ignition to on or Accessory mode.

   A DIC welcome message may be displayed indicating number 1 or 2 for memory recalls.

2. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired driving position.
3. Press and release SET; a beep will sound.
4. Immediately press and hold the 1 or 2 memory button matching the above DIC welcome message until two beeps sound.

   If too much time passes between releasing SET and pressing 1 or 2, the memory position will not be saved and the two beeps will not sound. Repeat Steps 3 and 4.

   1 or 2 corresponds to the driver number. See “Identifying Driver Number” previously in this section.

5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for the second driver using 1 or 2 and the other RKE transmitter.

To save positions for seat exit memory, repeat Steps 1–4 using , this time though, adjust the seat to a desirable position for getting out of the vehicle. Also See “Seat Exit Memory” further in the Section.

Save preferred memory feature positions to both 1 and 2 if you are the only driver.

Manually Recalling Memory Positions

Press and hold button 1, 2, or to recall the desired previously saved memory positions.

To stop manual recall movement, release 1, 2, or . Recall can also be stopped by pressing a power seat control or SET.

Seat Entry Memory

If the RKE transmitter is 1 or 2, and Seat Entry Memory is enabled in vehicle personalisation, the positions saved to the corresponding memory button 1 or 2 are automatically recalled when the ignition is turned on, or turned from off to Accessory mode. Seat entry memory recalls can only be saved to two RKE transmitters.

If required, to enable seat entry memory, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

The transmission must be in P (Park) to initiate a seat entry memory recall. The seat entry memory operation will complete if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the saved position.

To stop the movement, turn the ignition off or press any of the following controls:

- Power seat
- Memory SET, 1, 2, or

If the saved memory seat position does not automatically recall, or recalls to the wrong positions, the driver's RKE transmitter number (1 or 2) may not match the memory button number that positions were

saved to. Try saving the position to the other memory button or try the other RKE transmitter.

Seat Exit Memory

Seat exit memory is not linked to an RKE transmitter. The position saved to is used for all drivers. To enable seat exit memory, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

If enabled, the position saved to is automatically recalled when one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened within a short time.
- The vehicle is turned off with the driver door open.

To stop seat movement, during operation press any of the following memory controls:

- Power seat
- Memory SET, 1, 2, or

Obstructions

If an object is obstructing the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction and try the recall again. If the memory position still does not recall, see your dealer.

Heated and Ventilated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

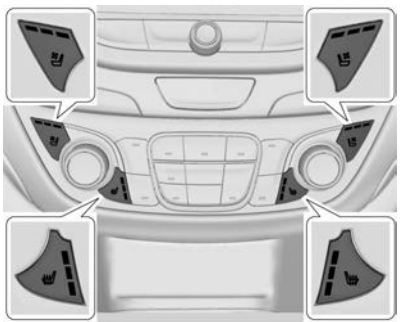
If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.



If available, the buttons are on the climate control panel. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat. Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Press or to ventilate the driver or passenger seat. A ventilated seat has a fan that pulls air through the seat cushion and seat back. The air is not cooled.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the ventilated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Reminder

If equipped, the message **Rear Seat Reminder Look In Rear Seat** displays under certain conditions indicating there may be an item or passenger in the rear seat. Check before exiting the vehicle.

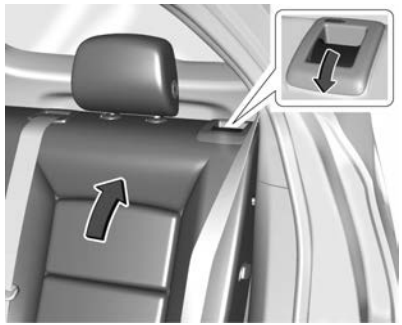
This feature will activate when a rear door is opened while the vehicle is on or up to 10 minutes before the vehicle is turned on. There will be an alert when the vehicle is turned off. The alert does not directly detect objects in the rear seat; instead, under certain conditions, it detects when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seat.

The feature is active only once each time the vehicle is turned on and off, and will require reactivation by opening and closing the rear doors. There may be an alert even when there is nothing in the rear seat; for example, if a child entered the vehicle through the rear door and left the vehicle without the vehicle being shut off.

The feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Reclining the Seat back

To recline the seat back:



1. Pull the reclining seat back handle.
2. Move the seat back to the desired position, and then release the handle to lock the seat back in place.

3. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

Folding the Seat Back

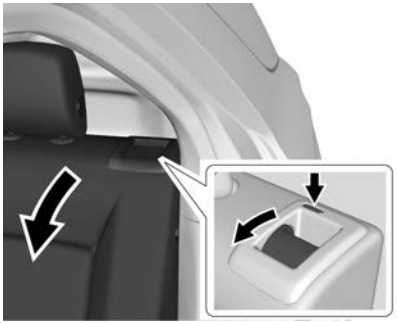
Either side of the seat back can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seat back only when the vehicle is not moving.

Caution

Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seat back:

1. Fold the rear outboard head restraints. For the centre position, remove the centre head restraint to achieve a flat rear cargo floor. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *32*.



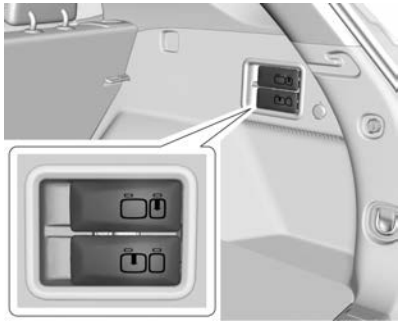
2. Pull the handle on top of the seat back to unlock it.

   A tab near the seat back handle raises when the seat back is unlocked.
3. Fold the seat back forward.



4. Stow the seat belt in the belt stowage clip.

   Repeat the steps to fold the other seat back, if desired.



If equipped, the rear seat backs can also be folded forward by pulling the levers on the driver side of the rear cargo area.

Raising the Seat Back

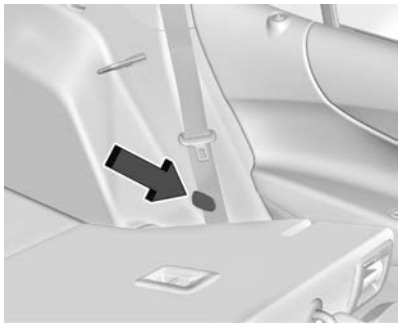
⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seat back, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seat back:

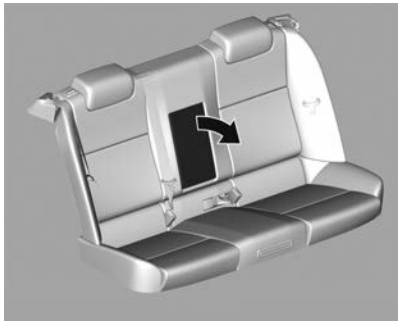


1. Ensure the seat belt is in the belt stowage clip.
2. Lift the seat back up and push it rearward to lock it in place.

   A tab near the seat back handle retracts when the seat back is locked in place.
3. Return the outboard head restraints to the upright position. If removed, reinstall the centre head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *32*.
4. Push and pull the top of the seat back to ensure it is locked into position.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seat back, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Rear Seat Armrest



The vehicle may have a rear middle armrest.

- Pull the armrest down to use.
- Push the armrest up when it is no longer required.

Note

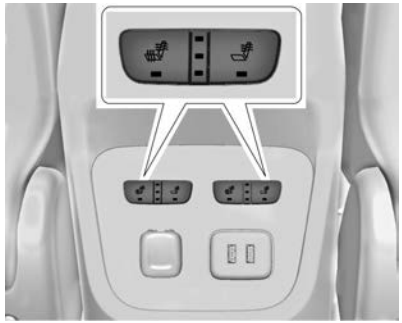
Ensure the armrest is folded up before folding the seatback forward.

Heated Rear Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.



If equipped, the rear heated seat controls are on the rear of the centre console. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion and seat back.

Press to heat the left or right outboard seat back only.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠ Warning

The seat belt can be pinched if it is routed under plastic trim on the seat, such as trim around the rear seatback folding handle or side airbag. In a crash, pinched seat belts might not be able to provide adequate protection. Never allow seat belts to be routed under plastic trim pieces.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting



The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.
5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

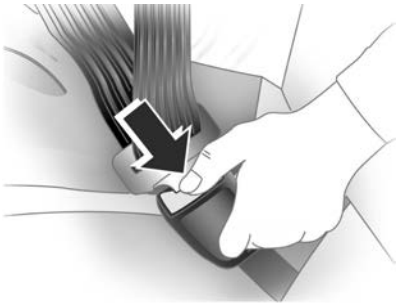


Note

For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.
2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. These allow the seat belt to lock and assist securing a child restraint in position. See *Child Restraint Installation Locations* ⇨ 57.

If a rear seat belt is pulled out fully, the locking feature may be engaged. If this occurs, allow the belt to retract fully and start again.

Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides

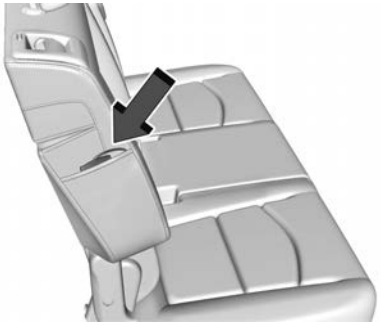
⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

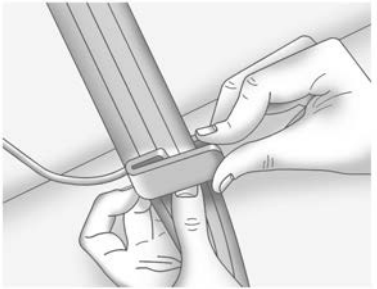
Rear seat belt comfort guides may provide added seat belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the shoulder belt away from the neck and head.

This vehicle has rear seat belt comfort guides in the rear outboard seating positions.

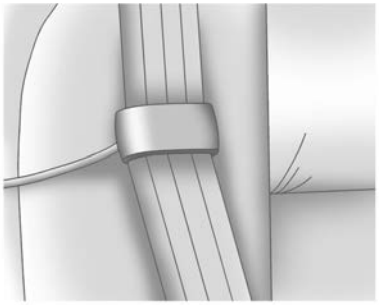
To install:



1. Remove the guide from its storage pocket on the side of the seat back.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Ensure the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be behind the belt with the plastic guide on the front.



4. Buckle, position, and release the seat belt as described previously in this section. Make sure the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so the seat belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide back into its storage pocket on the side of the seat back.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seat Belt Care

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



⚠ Warning

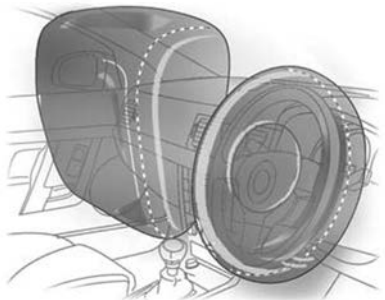
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These are identified by the word AIRBAG.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

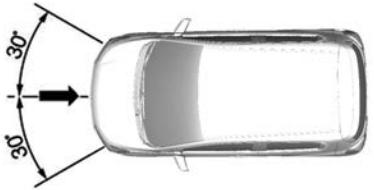
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



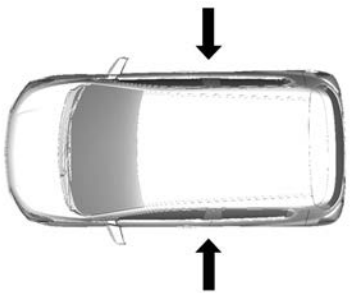
Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System

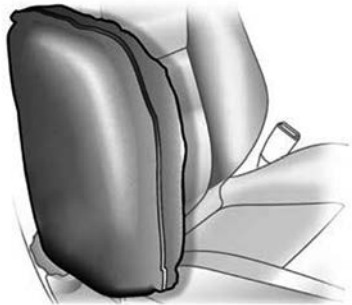
Side airbags are stored in the outer side of the front seats.



They can be identified by the word AIRBAG.



The side airbags deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.



The risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit any seat covers (except genuine Holden accessory covers) as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

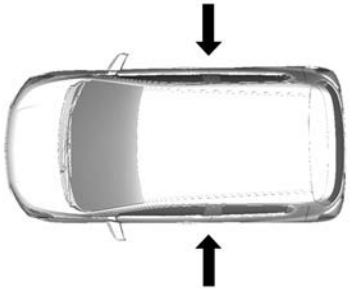
Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System

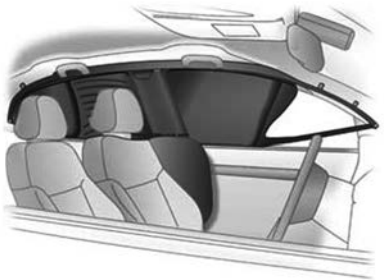


Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle.

They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the door pillars.



The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts.



The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the following will occur:

- The engine will switch off.
- The fuel pump will switch off.
- The hazard lamps will switch on.
- The interior lamp will switch on.
- The doors will unlock.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer Installed Equipment

⚠ Warning

The fitting of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *220*.

Airbag System Check

The in the instrument cluster illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If illuminates when driving.
- If the warning 'Airbag Fault' is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

  In these instances the SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *49*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note

After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

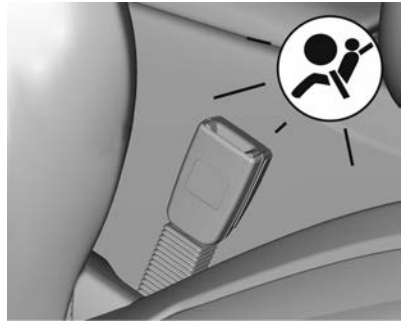
Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Seat Belt Pretensioners



Front seat belt pretensioners are part of the SRS. In certain severe collisions the seat belts are tightened by the seat belt pretensioners.

Child Restraints

Older Children

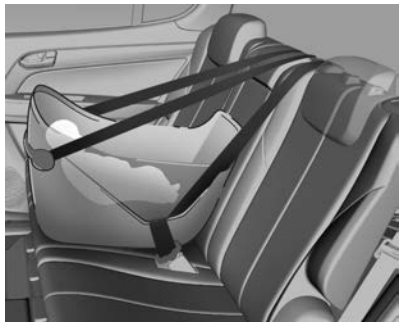


A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Infants and Young Children

Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats



Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia, and in New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Note

Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Selecting the Right System

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



Top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seat backs and are identified with symbol .

Do not attach anything other than a child restraint system to the vehicle top tether anchors.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

The vehicle has been designed to accommodate child restraints on the rear seat.

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitting carefully.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. Use these in conjunction with a top tether strap when a non-ISOFIX child seat is being used.

Extend the seat belt fully and then fit the belt around the applicable locations on the child restraint and fasten the buckle. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint.

Allow the belt to retract. While the belt is retracting, a clicking noise can be heard which indicates the ALR mechanism is functioning. The seat belt is locked and cannot be extended until fully retracted, enabling the belt to be fitted securely to the child restraint.

To release the locking mechanism, undo the buckle and allow the seat belt to fully retract. It will then function as a normal Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seat belt until fully extended again.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



ISOFIX mounting locations are marked by a on the rear seat back.

Fasten the vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

Ensure the seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchor points.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 59
Glovebox 59
Cup-holders 59
Sunglasses Storage 60
Rear Storage 60
Centre Console Storage 61
Umbrella Storage 61

Additional Storage Features
Cargo Cover 61
Cargo Tie-Downs 63

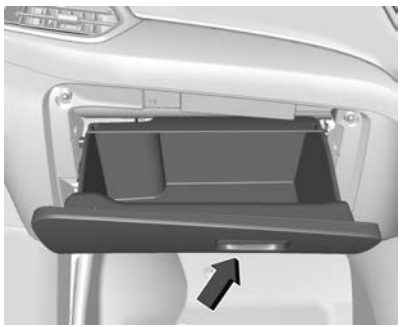
Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 64

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

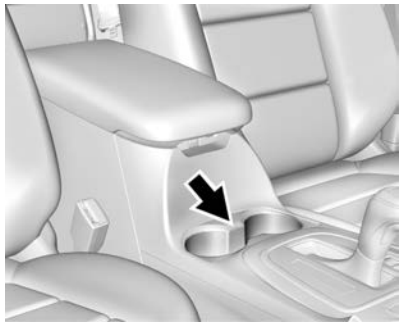
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glovebox



Open the glove box by lifting the lever.

Cup-holders



Two cup-holders are located in the centre console.

Cup-holders are also located in the rear seat armrest. To access, pull the armrest down.

Bottles may be stored in each door pocket.

Sunglasses Storage



A covered storage compartment for sunglasses is located in the overhead console. Press the latch to open.

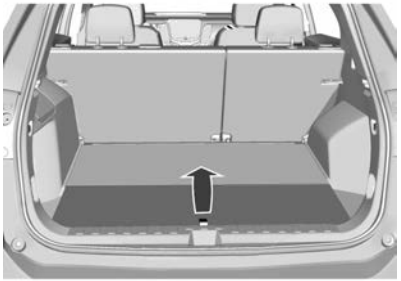
Rear Storage

There is a storage area under the rear load floor.

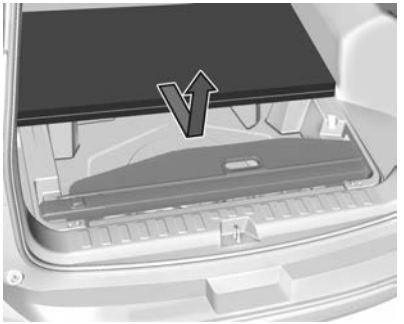
Caution
Do not store items beyond the top of the storage area or the load floor may be damaged.

To remove:

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.



3. If desired, pull the load floor rearward slightly to disengage the retaining clips, and then lift upward to remove.

To install:

1. Place the load floor folded into position and locate the retaining clips.
2. Slide the floor forward to engage the clips.
3. Fold the rear part of the floor to close.

Centre Console Storage



There is storage in the centre console; lift the lever on the front to open.

Umbrella Storage



Pockets are provided under the armrest in each front door trim to store an umbrella. The pocket is identified by an embossed symbol on the door trim.

Note

The umbrella pockets are designed for compact type umbrellas only.

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Cover

If equipped, use the cargo cover to provide added security for items stored beneath.

⚠ Warning

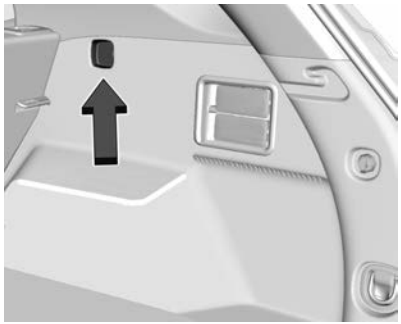
Do not place objects on the cargo cover. Sudden stops or turns can cause objects to be thrown in the vehicle. You or others could be injured.

To fit the cover:

1. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front and remove the cover from the under floor storage area.



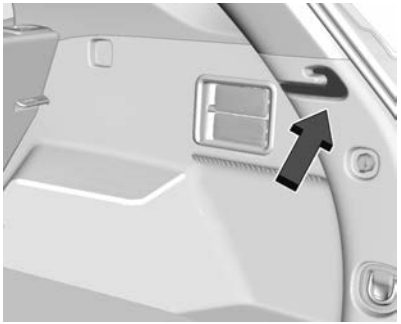
2. Press the buttons to unlock the ends of the cover.



3. Insert one end of the cover into the front recess in the side trim.
4. Push the other end of the cover and insert into the opposite side trim front recess.

To extend the cargo cover:

1. Use the handle to extend the cover rearward.



2. Engage the cover into the rear recesses in the side trims on each side.

To retract the cargo cover:

1. Use the handle to pull the cover rearward slightly.
2. Allow the cover to move down slightly and out of the side trim recesses.
3. Gently retract the cover while holding the handle.

To remove the cover from the vehicle:

1. Pull both ends toward each other to disengage the cover from the side trims.
2. Store the cover in the under floor storage area as follows.

⚠ Warning

An unsecured cargo cover could strike people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Store the cargo cover securely or remove it from the vehicle.

To store the cargo cover:

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.



3. Press the buttons on both ends until locked.

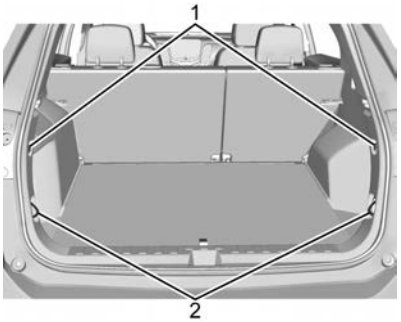


4. Insert the right side of the cargo cover first.



5. Store under the load floor.

Cargo Tie-Downs



1. Convenience Net Retainers
2. Cargo Tie-Downs

The vehicle may be equipped with two cargo tie-downs and two convenience net retainers in the rear compartment.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single cargo tie-down.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *288*.

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden approved straps.

That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

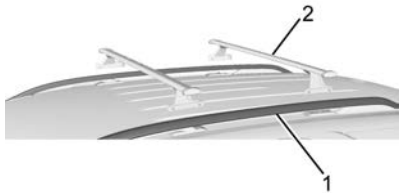
Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat.

Roof Rack System

Holden genuine roof cross rails can be purchased as an accessory and used to load items.

The cross rails can only be fitted to models equipped with side rails. See your dealer for further information.



1. Side Rails
2. Cross Rails

⚠ Warning

Ensure all objects carried on the roof rack system are loaded evenly and are secured tightly with straps.

Never carry objects that are longer or wider than the vehicle unless using a Holden certified accessory carrier.

Caution

The load, including the weight of the roof cross rails, must not exceed 75 kg.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to ensure the cross rails and cargo are securely fastened.

Loading cargo on the roof rack system will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise loss of control may result.

If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to ensure the cargo remains in its place.

Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *288*.

Instruments and Controls

Controls
Steering Wheel Adjustment 67
Steering Wheel Controls 67
Heated Steering Wheel 68
Horn 69
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 69
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 71
Compass 72
Clock 72
Power Outlets 72
Wireless Charging 75

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 77
Instrument Cluster 78
Speedometer 80
Odometer 80
Trip Odometer 80
Tachometer 81
Fuel Gauge 81
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 82
Seat Belt Reminders 82
Airbag Readiness Light 83
Charging System Light 84
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 84
Brake System Warning Light ... 85
Electric Parking Brake Light ... 86
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 86
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 86
Hill Descent Control Light 87
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light 87
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 87
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator 88
Traction Off Light 88
Traction Control System (TCS)/ Electronic Stability Control Light 88
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 89
Engine Oil Pressure Light 89
Low Fuel Warning Light 89
Security Light 90
High-Beam On Light 90
Front Fog Lamp Light 91
Lamps On Reminder 91
Cruise Control Light 91

Information Displays
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 91

Vehicle Messages
Vehicle Messages 98
Engine Power Messages 98
Vehicle Speed Messages 98

Vehicle Personalisation
Vehicle Personalisation 99

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Move the lever down.
2. To adjust, move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

   Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

Steering Wheel Controls

The steering wheel controls allow some audio functions to be adjusted, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) menus to be accessed and other vehicle functions to be controlled.

Note

Controls may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.



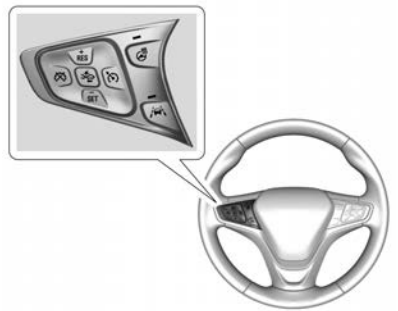
: Press to interact with the Bluetooth system. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *143*.

: Press to reject an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

◁ **or** ▷ **:** Press to go to the previous or next DIC menu option.

△ **or** ▽ **:** Press to go to the next or previous DIC selection.

✓ **:** Press to select a highlighted DIC menu option.

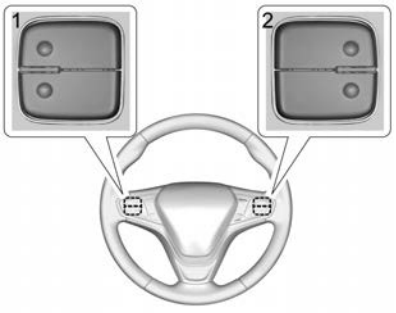


, , **+RES, −SET :** Cruise control operation. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *189*.

: Forward collision alert control. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *204*.

: Heated steering wheel control. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *68*.

: Lane keep assist control. See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *212*.



Infotainment system favourite and volume switches are on the back of the steering wheel.

1. Favourite: When on a radio source, press to select the next or previous favourite. When on a media source, press to select the next or previous track.
2. Volume: Press to increase or decrease the volume.

Heated Steering Wheel



: If equipped with a heated steering wheel, press to turn on or off. A light near the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to start heating.

Horn



Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer





⚠ Warning

Before driving the vehicle, always clear snow and ice from the bonnet, windscreen, roof, and rear of the vehicle, including all lamps and windows. Reduced visibility from snow and ice buildup could lead to a crash.

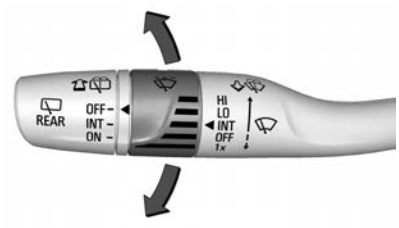
Caution

Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

With the ignition on or in Accessory mode, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Fast.

LO : Slow.



INT : Intermittent.

To adjust the wipe frequency, turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

AUTO : For vehicles with rain sensing wipers see “Rain Sensing” later in this section.

OFF : The wipers are off.

1x : Single wipe.

Briefly move the wiper lever down for a single wipe. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades before using them. If frozen to the windscreen, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *239*.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windscreen wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windscreen.

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are operating due to windscreen washing or rain sensing operation, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windscreen.

Rain Sensing

The vehicle may have rain sensing wipers.

A sensor near the top centre of the windscreen detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

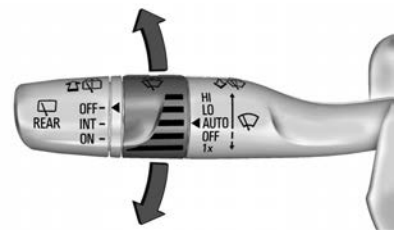
Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

Caution

Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.

Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.



AUTO : Rain sensing is on.

The wipers cycle when water is detected on the windscreen. Turn the band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.

- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windscreen wiper lever out of the AUTO position to deactivate Rain sensing operation.

To enable or disable this feature, see “Rain Sense Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalisation ⇨ 99*.

Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

With rain sensing wipers, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windscreen.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Windscreen Washer

: Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached.

When the lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windscreen washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid ⇨ 236* for information on filling the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer

The ignition must be on or in Accessory mode to operate the rear window wiper/washer.



Turn the end of the windscreen wiper lever to operate the rear window wiper/washer.

OFF : The rear wiper is off.

INT : Intermittent.

ON : Continuous, slow speed.

: Push the windscreen wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear window. The lever automatically returns to its original position when released.

Rear Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the rear wiper control to OFF to disable the rear wiper. If the

transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the rear wiper may automatically park.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Reverse Gear Operation

Even if the rear wiper is off, when the transmission is in R (Reverse), and the front windscreen wiper is in low or high speed operation, the rear wiper will automatically operate continuously.

If the rear wiper is off, when the transmission is in R (Reverse), and the front windscreen wiper is in intermittent operation, the rear wiper will automatically operate intermittently.

This feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

The windscreen washer reservoir is used for the windscreen and rear window. Check the fluid level regularly. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *236*.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, electronic stability control system and vehicle speed information.

The compass system is designed to operate for a certain distance or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. If the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when a GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again.

Clock

Set the time and date in the infotainment system. See *Settings* ⇨ *149*.

Power Outlets

12V Power Outlet

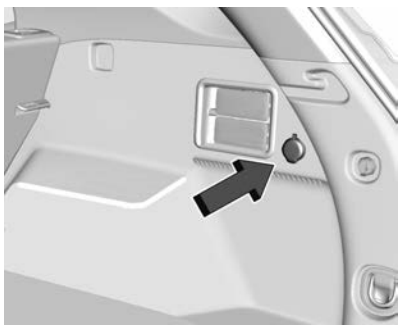
The vehicle has three 12 volt accessory power outlets, which can be used to connect electrical equipment.



The front 12V power outlet is located in the centre console, below the climate control system.



A 12V power outlet is also located at the rear of the centre console.



A 12V power outlet is also located in the rear load compartment.

To use an outlet, open the cover.

Caution

Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 amp rating.

Certain accessory plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle and adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, follow the installation instructions included with the equipment.

Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as mobile phone charge cords.

USB Port

The vehicle may have two USB ports, each with one or two outlets, which can be used to connect electrical equipment, such as a mobile phone, MP3 player, etc.



The front USB port is located at the front of the centre console, below the climate control system.
It contains an A-type and a C-type USB outlet.

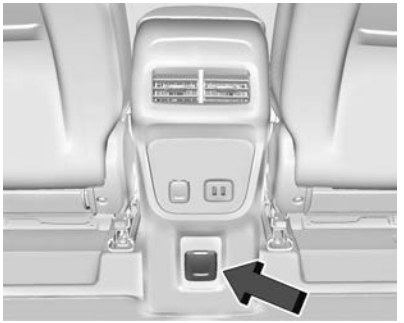
These outlets can be used to charge connected USB devices and also to connect an audio device to the infotainment system. See *USB Port* ⇨ *121*.



A USB port may also be located at the rear of the centre console. This port is for charging USB devices only.

230V AC Power Outlet

If equipped, this power outlet can be used to connect electrical equipment that uses a maximum limit of 150 watts.



The power outlet is at the rear of the centre console.

An indicator light on the outlet turns on to show it is in use. The light comes on when the ignition is on and equipment requiring less than 150 watts is plugged into the outlet, and no system fault is detected.

The indicator light does not come on when the ignition is off or if the equipment is not fully seated into the outlet.

If equipment is connected using more than 150 watts or a system fault is detected, a protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light turns off.

To reset the circuit, unplug the item and then plug it back in, or turn the ignition off and also ensure Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is off. Then turn the ignition back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *177*.

The power restarts when equipment using 150 watts or less is plugged into the outlet and a system fault is not detected.

The power outlet is not designed for the following and may not work properly if they are plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage, such as compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools.
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply.
- Medical equipment.

Wireless Charging

If equipped, the vehicle has wireless charging in the bin below the climate control system. The system operates at 145 kHz and wirelessly charges one Qi compatible smartphone. The power output of the system is capable of charging at a rate up to 3 amp (19.5W), as requested by the compatible smartphone.

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The vehicle must be on, in Accessory, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. The wireless charging feature may not correctly indicate charging when the vehicle is in RAP. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *177*.

The operating temperature is −20 ° C to 60 °C for the charging system and 0 °C to 35 °C for the phone.

⚠ Warning

Remove all objects from the charging pad before charging your compatible smartphone. Objects, such as coins, keys, rings, paper clips, or cards, between the smartphone and charging pad will become very hot. On the rare occasion that the charging system does not detect an object, and the object gets wedged between the smartphone and charger, remove the smartphone and allow the object to cool before removing it from the charging pad, to prevent burns.



To charge a compatible smartphone:

1. Remove all objects from the charging pad. The system may not charge if there are any objects between the smartphone and the charging pad.
2. Place the smartphone face up on the charging pad aligned against the back of the bin.

   To maximise the charge rate, ensure the smartphone is fully seated and centred in the holder with nothing under it. A thick smartphone case may prevent the wireless charger from working, or may reduce the charging performance. See your dealer for additional information.
3. The ϟ will appear on the ✆ on the infotainment display. This indicates that the smartphone is properly positioned and charging.

   The smartphone may become warm during charging. This is normal. In warmer temperatures, the speed of charging may be reduced.

If ϟ does not appear on the infotainment display:

1. Remove the smartphone from the pad and wait three seconds.
2. Turn the smartphone 180 degrees before placing/ aligning the smartphone on the pad again.

Software Acknowledgements

A Certain Wireless Charging Module product from LG Electronics, Inc. ("LGE") contains the open source software detailed below. Refer to the indicated open source licences (as are included following this notice) for the terms and conditions of their use.

OSS Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, please visit http://opensource.lge.com. In addition to the source code, all referred licence terms, warranty disclaimers and copyright notices are available for download. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid for three (3) years from the date on which you purchased the product.

Freescale-WCT library

Copyright (c) 2012-2014 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

This software is provided by the copyright holders and contributors "as is" and any express or implied warranties, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose are disclaimed. In no event shall the copyright holder or contributors be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special, exemplary, or consequential damages (including, but not limited to, procurement of substitute goods or services; loss of use, data, or profits; or business interruption) however caused and on any theory of liability, whether in contract, strict liability, or tort (including negligence or otherwise) arising in any way out of the use of this software, even if advised of the possibility of such damage.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

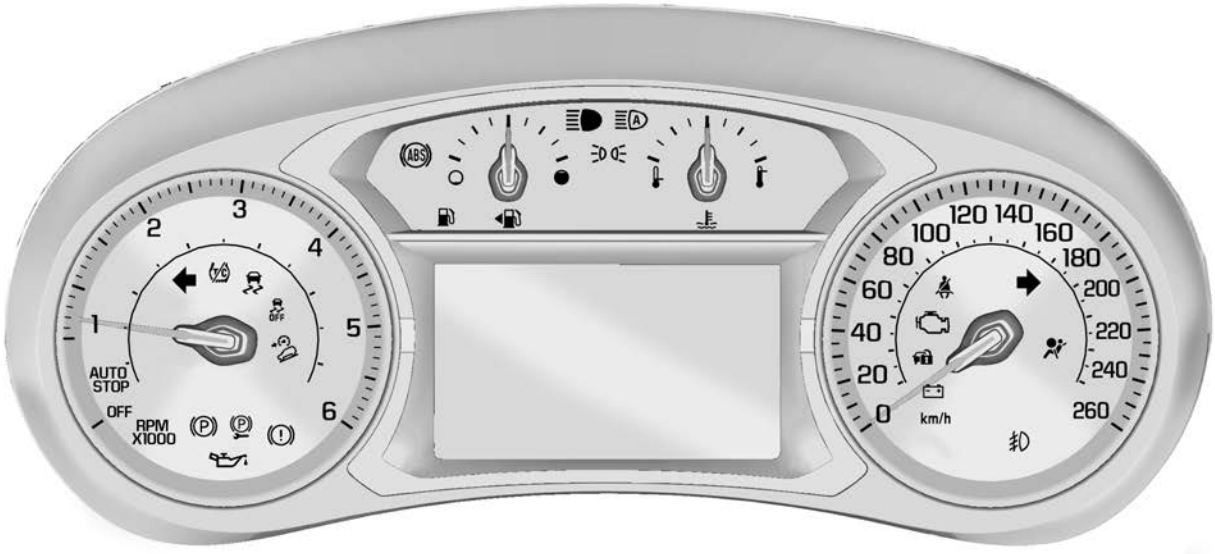
Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster



Midlevel



Uplevel

Note
Displays may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

Overview

Symbols Shown on Instrument Cluster

: *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *83*

: *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *86*

: *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *85*

: *Charging System Light* ⇨ *84*

: *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *91*

: *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *86*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *89*

: *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *82*

: *Engine Oil Pressure Light* ⇨ *89*

: *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *90*

: High beam assist, see *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *90*

: *Hill Descent Control Light* ⇨ *87*

: *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ *91*

: Lane keep assist (Midlevel), see *Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light* ⇨ *87*

: *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ *89*

: *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *84*

: Driver seat belt reminder, see *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *82*

: *Security Light* ⇨ *90*

: *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *86*

: *Traction Control System (TCS)/ Electronic Stability Control Light* ⇨ *88*

: *Traction Off Light* ⇨ *88*

: *Vehicle Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *87*

Symbols Shown on Driver Information Centre

: Lane keep assist (Uplevel), see *Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light* ⇨ *87*

: *Pedestrian Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *88*

: Rear passenger seat belt reminder, see *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *82*

Symbol Shown on Overhead Console

: Front passenger seat belt reminder, see *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *82*

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *91*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

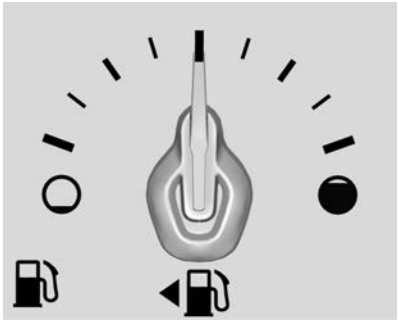
When pointing to AUTO STOP, the engine is off but the vehicle is on. The engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

Drive the vehicle at a low engine speed for each gear as much as possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not allow the needle to remain in the warning/red zone.

Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the tank. Up level shown, mid level is similar.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. A message may also be displayed in the Driver Information Centre. There is a small amount of fuel left, but the fuel tank should be filled as soon as possible.

An arrow on the fuel pump symbol indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

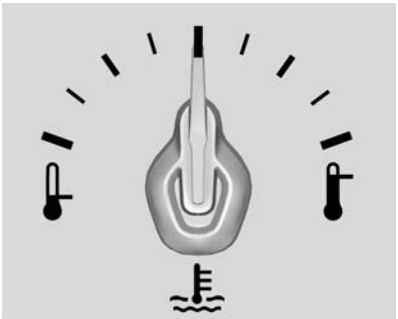
⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, stop the vehicle and switch the engine off.

Note

- Movement of the fuel within the fuel tank may cause the fuel gauge indicator to move when braking, accelerating, turning or if the vehicle is on an incline.
- The indicator takes a few seconds to stabilise after the ignition is turned on.
- The indicator returns to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature when the ignition is on. Up level shown, mid level is similar.

If the indicator moves toward the high end of the gauge, the engine is too hot.

If the engine coolant has overheated and the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *235*.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Front Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

The vehicle has a passenger seat belt reminder light located in the overhead console.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

This cycle continues several times if the front passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag,

grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Rear Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light



Mid-level Instrument Cluster

Rear seating positions monitored for seat belt use are represented by a symbol in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicating seat belt status.

When the vehicle is started, three seat belt symbols come on and stay on for several seconds in the instrument cluster to alert the driver that passengers may need to fasten their seat belts.

If a seat belt is not initially buckled, the instrument cluster displays a grey seat belt symbol. While the vehicle is moving, if a rear seat passenger that was previously buckled becomes unbuckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol will appear and a chime may sound.

Up-level Instrument Cluster

Rear seating positions monitored for seat belt use are represented by a coloured symbol in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicating seat belt status.

When the vehicle is started, three seat belt symbols come on and stay on for several seconds in the instrument cluster to alert the driver that passengers may need to fasten their seat belts.

After a rear seat passenger seat belt is buckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol in the instrument cluster turns green. If a seat belt is not initially buckled, the instrument cluster displays a grey seat belt symbol. While the vehicle is moving, if a rear seat passenger that was previously buckled becomes unbuckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol will change to flashing red and a chime may sound.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* ⇨ *49*.



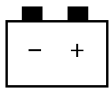
The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also come on.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. The light turns off when the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

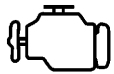
When this light comes on, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) also displays a message.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

This light comes on when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on while the engine is running, a malfunction has been detected and the vehicle may require service.



Malfunctions are often indicated by the system before any problem is noticeable. Being aware of the light and seeking service promptly when it comes on may prevent damage.

Caution

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If the light is flashing : A malfunction has been detected that could damage the emission control system and increase vehicle emissions. Diagnosis and service may be required.

To help prevent damage, reduce vehicle speed and avoid hard accelerations and uphill gradients. If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to park. Turn the engine off and wait at least 10 seconds before restarting the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous guidelines and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light is on steady : A malfunction has been detected. Diagnosis and service may be required.

Check the following:

- A loose or missing fuel cap may cause the light to come on. See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *215*. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed may turn the light off.
- Poor fuel quality can cause inefficient engine operation and poor driveability, which may go away once the engine is warmed up. If this occurs, change the fuel brand. It may require at least one full tank of the correct fuel to turn the light off. See *Fuel* ⇨ *214*.

If the light remains on, see your dealer.

Brake System Warning Light



This light should come on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on at start up, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The brake pedal might be harder to push, or the brake pedal may go closer to the floor. It could take

longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *271*.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light



This light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light



This light should come on briefly when starting the vehicle. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on, take the vehicle to your dealer as soon as possible. See the information for the Electric Parking Brake under *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *183*. A message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the ABS light comes on and stays on while driving, stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Start the engine again to reset the system. If the light stays on after driving at a speed above 20 km/h,

see your dealer for service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *85*.

Hill Descent Control Light



If equipped, the Hill Descent Control light comes on when the system is ready for use. When the light flashes, the system is active.

See *Hill Descent Control (HDC)* ⇨ *188*.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light



After the vehicle is started, this light turns off and stays off if LKA has not been turned on or is unavailable.

If available, this light is white if LKA is turned on, but not ready to assist. This light is green if LKA is turned on and is ready to assist.

LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. The LKA light is amber when assisting.

This light flashes amber as a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed.

LKA will not assist or alert if the turn signal is active in the direction of lane departure, or if LKA detects that you are accelerating, braking, or actively steering.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *212*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead. It will change to amber when the distance to the preceding vehicle becomes small, or when approaching the vehicle too rapidly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *204*.

Pedestrian Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this indicator will display amber when a nearby pedestrian is detected in front of the vehicle.

See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *208*.

Traction Off Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off through the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

This light and the ESC OFF light come on when Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel speed will be limited when necessary to protect the driveline from damage. Adjust driving accordingly.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *186*.

Traction Control System (TCS)/Electronic Stability Control Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the ESC system have been disabled. A Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also display. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether the vehicle requires service.

If the light is on and flashing, the TCS and/or the ESC system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *186*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the ESC system is turned off. If ESC is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

If the ESC and TCS are off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the ESC systems and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *186*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

Caution
Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

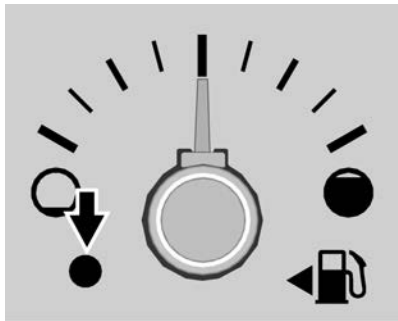


This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

Mid level



This light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on as a check to indicate it is working. If it does not come on, see your dealer.

The low fuel warning light comes on and a chime sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added to the fuel tank.

Up level



This light is near the fuel gauge and comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, see your dealer.

Security Light



The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobiliser Operation* ⇨ *24*.

High-Beam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *106*.

High Beam Assist



If equipped, this light comes on when the high beam assist system is enabled. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *104*.

Front Fog Lamp Light



This light comes on when the fog lamps are on.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps* ⇨ *108*.

Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the exterior lights are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *104*.

Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready. It turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

The light turns off when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *189*.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) in located in the centre of the instrument cluster and displays vehicle information or the status of many vehicle systems.

Note

Display items may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

To navigate the DIC pages and menus, use the steering wheel controls.



△ or ▽ : Press to move up or down in a list.

◁ or ▷ : Press to move between the main pages in the DIC.

✓ : Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

Midlevel DIC

Press ◁ or ▷ to choose the main pages indicated in the top line of the display:

: Trip

: Vehicle

: ECO

Use △ or ▽ to scroll through items in each page.

Note

Some of the displayed functions may differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill.

Trip Page Items

Speed : Displays vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Trip 1 or Trip 2, Average Fuel Consumption : Displays the distance travelled in kilometres (km) since this page was reset.

Also displays the approximate average fuel usage in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km) recorded since the last time this page item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. Reset by pressing ✓ while this page is displayed.

Fuel Range : Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Average Vehicle Speed : Displays the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset. Reset the average speed by pressing ✓ when it is displayed.

Timer : To start the timer, press ✓ while Timer is displayed. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after

which the display will return to zero.

To stop the timer, press ✓ briefly while the Timer is displayed. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold ✓.

Blank Display : Displays no information.

Vehicle Page Items

Remaining Oil Life : Displays an estimate of the engine oil's remaining useful life. If 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, a **Change Engine Oil Soon** message will be displayed. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil ⇨ 229*.

The oil life display must be reset after each engine oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not reset the display at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press ✓ while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System ⇨ 231*.

Oil Pressure : Oil pressure is displayed in kilopascal (kPa). Oil pressure can vary with engine speed, outside temperature, and oil viscosity. On some models, the oil pump will vary engine oil pressure according to engine needs. Oil pressure may change quickly as the engine speed or load varies. This is normal. If the oil pressure warning light or a DIC message indicates oil pressure outside the normal operating range, check the vehicle's oil as soon as possible.

Following Distance : If equipped, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ 204*.

Battery Voltage : Displays the current battery voltage, if equipped. Battery voltage changes are normal while driving. See *Charging System Light ⇨ 84*. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message.

Coolant Temperature : Displays the coolant temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Traction & Stability : Displays the current status (on or off) of the Traction Control and Electronic Stability Control systems. Press ✓ to turn on or off Traction Control or Electronic Stability Control. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ 186*.

Speed Warning : This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and an alert is displayed. The speed can be set by pressing ✓ while the speed warning display is showing.

ECO Page Items

Fuel Economy : Displays the approximate fuel economy as a number and bar graph. Displayed

above the bar graph is a running average of fuel economy for the most recently travelled selected distance. Displayed below the bar graph is the best average fuel economy that has been achieved for the selected distance. The selected distance is displayed as 'last xxx km'. Press ✓ to change the distance.

The display provides information on how current driving behavior affects the running average and how well recent driving compares to the best that has been achieved for the selected distance.

Economy Trend : Displays the history of the average fuel economy for the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side.

Uplevel DIC

Press ◁ or ▷ to choose the main pages indicated in the top line of the display:

: Home

: Information

: Audio

: Navigation

: Phone

: Options

Use △ or ▽ to scroll through items in each page.

Note
Some of the displayed functions may differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill.

Home Page Items

The following is the list of all possible items that can be displayed on the Home page. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on from the Options page. See “Options Page Items” further in this section.

Speed : Displays vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Speed Sign :



Displays the current speed limit in kilometres per hour (km/h).

The display information is sourced from the onboard navigation system. If at any time you lose navigation, or if there is no data available for the speed limit in the current area, two dashes in the speed sign are displayed.

This feature is to be used as a guide only and does not replace current posted speed limits. As the information is sourced from the onboard navigation system's database, there is a possibility posted limits have changed since the database was produced.

Time : Displays the current time in the top line of the DIC. To set the time see *Settings* ⇨ *149*.

Fuel Range : Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Information Page Items

The following is the list of all possible items that can be displayed on the Information page. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on from the Options page. See “Options Page Items” further in this section.

Speed : Displays the vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).



This page may also display the current speed limit in kilometres per hour (km/h).

The display information is sourced from the onboard navigation system. If at any time you lose navigation, or if there is no data available for the speed limit in the current area, two dashes in the speed sign are displayed.

This feature is to be used as a guide only and does not replace current posted speed limits. As the information is sourced from the onboard navigation system's database, there is a possibility posted limits have changed since the database was produced.

Press ✓ to display a menu to turn off the speed sign display.

Trip 1 or Trip 2 : Displays the distance travelled in kilometres (km) since this page was reset.

Also displays the approximate average fuel usage in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km) recorded since the last time this page item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. Reset by pressing ✓ while this page is displayed.

Fuel Information : Fuel Range: Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Instant: Shows real-time fuel usage as you are driving.

Oil Life : Displays an estimate of the engine oil's remaining useful life. If 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, a **Change Engine Oil Soon** message will be displayed. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *229*.

The oil life display must be reset after each engine oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not reset the display at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press ✓ while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *231*.

Fuel Economy 100km : Displays the approximate fuel economy for the last 100 km travelled as a number and bar graph. Displayed above the bar graph is a running average of fuel economy achieved. Displayed below the bar graph is the best average fuel economy achieved.

The display provides information on how current driving behaviour affects the running average and how well recent driving compares to the best that has been achieved.

Press ✓ to reset. After reset, the values display "-,-" until a distance has been travelled.

Average Speed : Displays the average vehicle speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset. Reset the average speed by pressing ✓.

Timer : To start, stop or reset the timer, press ✓ while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will return to zero.

Follow Distance : If equipped, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value on this page.

Driver Assistance : Displays information for the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and Forward Collision Alert (FCA) systems.

Battery Voltage : Displays the current battery voltage. Battery voltage changes are normal while driving. See *Charging System Light* ⇨ *84*. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message.

Coolant Temperature : Displays the coolant temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Economy Trend : Shows history of the average fuel economy from the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side. Press ✓ to reset.

Oil Pressure : Oil pressure is displayed in kilopascal (kPa). Oil pressure can vary with engine speed, outside temperature, and oil viscosity. On some models, the oil pump will vary engine oil pressure according to engine needs. Oil

pressure may change quickly as the engine speed or load varies. This is normal. If the oil pressure warning light or a DIC message indicates oil pressure outside the normal operating range, check the vehicle's oil as soon as possible.

Audio Page Items

Enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source. Press ✓ to display the audio menu. Use △ or ▽ to scroll through items and then ✓ to select.

Navigation Page Items

Displays location or route guidance. Press ✓ to display the navigation menu. Use △ or ▽ to scroll through items and then ✓ to select.

Phone Page Items

Enables managing and performing phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating a connected hands free mobile phone.

Options Page Items

Traction & Stability : Enables the Traction Control (TC) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) systems to be turned on or off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *186*. Press ✓ to display the current TC and ESC status (on or off) and then press ✓ to open an options menu to change a setting.

Info Page Options : Press ✓ to open a list of items that can be displayed or turned off in the Information page.

1. Press △ or ▽ to scroll the items.
2. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a check-mark will appear next to it.

Home Page Options : Press ✓ to open a list of items that can be displayed or turned off in the Home page.

1. Press △ or ▽ to scroll the items.
2. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a check-mark will appear next to it.

Speed Warning : This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and an alert is displayed.

Press ✓ to turn on and then press △ or ▽ to select the desired speed. Press ◁ or ▷ and then ✓ to set or cancel.

Software Information : Displays software information and licence agreements.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or an action that may be needed to correct a condition, or displayed in response to an action. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing ✓. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed.

All messages should be taken seriously; clearing the message does not correct the problem.

If a SERVICE message appears, see your dealer.

Follow the instructions given in the messages. The system may display messages regarding the following topics:

- Service Messages
- Fluid Levels
- Vehicle Security
- Brakes
- Ride Control Systems
- Driver Assistance Systems
- Cruise Control
- Lighting and Bulb Replacement
- Wiper/Washer Systems
- Doors and Windows
- Seat Belts
- Airbag Systems
- Engine and Transmission
- Battery

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's propulsion power is reduced. A reduction in propulsion power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no observed reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Any time this message stays on, or displays repeatedly, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Under certain operating conditions, propulsion will be disabled. Try restarting after the vehicle has been off for 30 seconds.

Vehicle Speed Messages

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX KM/H

This message shows the vehicle speed has been limited to the speed displayed. The limited speed is a protection for various engine and vehicle systems such as the lubrication and cooling systems, etc.

Vehicle Personalisation

Use the infotainment system controls to access the menus for customising vehicle features.

Note

The following are possible items under the 'Vehicle' tab. For a description of the items under the 'System' and 'Apps' tabs, see *Settings* ⇨ *149*. Depending on the vehicle model, some items may not be available.

To access the Vehicle menu:

1. Touch the Settings icon on the infotainment display Home Page.
2. Touch the Vehicle tab to display a list of available items.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch ◯ or | to turn a feature off or on.
5. Touch < to go back to the previous menu or touch X to go to the top level of the Settings menu.

The Vehicle menu may contain the following:

Rear Seat Reminder

This allows for a chime and a message to be displayed when the rear door has been opened before or during operation of the vehicle.

Touch Off or On.

Climate and Air Quality

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Auto Demist
- Auto Rear Demist

Auto Fan Speed

This setting specifies the amount of airflow when the climate control fan setting is Auto Fan.

Touch Low, Medium, or High.

Auto Demist

This setting automatically turns the front demister on when the engine is started.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Rear Demist

This setting automatically turns the rear demister on when the engine is started.

Touch Off or On.

Collision/Detection Systems

Touch and the following may display:

- Alert Type
- Forward Collision System
- Front Pedestrian Detection
- Lane Change Alert
- Park Assist
- Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert

Alert Type

This feature will set the type of driver assistance system alert to help avoid crashes. The Safety Alert Seat setting activates vibration pulses to the driver's seat.

Touch Beeps or Safety Alert Seat.

Forward Collision System

This feature will turn on or off Forward Collision Alert (FCA) and Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB). The Off setting disables all FCA and AEB functions. With the Alert and Brake setting, both FCA and AEB are available. The Alert setting disables AEB. See *Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *206*.

Touch Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Front Pedestrian Detection

This feature will turn on or off Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB). The Off setting disables all FPB functions. With the Alert and Brake setting, the system can brake or steer the vehicle to help avoid or reduce the severity of a collision with a pedestrian. The Alert setting provides an alert only. See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *208*.

Touch Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Lane Change Alert

The LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding lane change crashes. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *210*.

Touch Off or On.

Park Assist

This setting allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *198*.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Camera Park Assist Symbols

This setting enables the rear camera park assist symbols to be displayed. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *193*.

Touch Off or On.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

This allows the rear cross traffic alert feature to be turned on or off. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *193*.

Touch Off or On.

Comfort and Convenience

Touch and the following may display:

- Chime Volume
- Personalisation by Driver
- Rain Sense Wipers
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear
- Extended Hill Start Assist
- Hands Free Liftgate Control

Chime Volume

This determines the chime volume level.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to adjust the volume.

Personalisation by Driver

Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

Touch Off or On.

Rain Sense Wipers

Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the windscreen wipers with the rain sensor.

Touch Enabled or Disabled.

Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear

When on and the front wiper is on, the rear wiper will automatically activate when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse).

Touch Off or On.

Extended Hill Start Assist

This allows the duration of the hill start assist to be changed. See *Hill Start Assist (HSA)* ⇨ *185*.

Touch Extended Hold or Standard Hold.

Hands Free Liftgate Control

The liftgate may be operated with a kicking motion under the rear bumper between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *17*.

Touch Off, On-Open and Close, or On-Open Only.

Lighting

Touch and the following may display:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting

Vehicle Locator Lights

This feature will flash the exterior lamps and allows some of the exterior lamps and most of the interior lamps to turn on briefly when on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed to locate the vehicle.

Touch Off or On.

Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Touch Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

Power Door Locks

Touch and the following may display:

- Open Door Anti Lockout
- Auto Door Lock
- Delayed Door Lock

Open Door Anti Lock Out

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open.

Touch Off or On.

Auto Door Lock

When this feature is turned on, all doors will automatically lock when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

The doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

Touch Off or On.

Delayed Door Lock

Displays when Open Door Anti Lock Out is off. When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Lock, Unlock, and Start

Touch and the following may display:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Start Auto Cool Seats
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Remote Window Operation
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

Remote Unlock Light Feedback

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Touch Off or Flash Lights.

Remote Lock Feedback

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Touch Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

Remote Door Unlock

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

Touch All Doors or Driver Door.

Remote Start Auto Cool Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn on the ventilated seats when using remote start on warm days. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40* and *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *12*.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Start Auto Heat Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn on the heated seats when using remote start on cold days. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40* and *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *12*.

Touch Off or On.

Remote Window Operation

This allows the windows to be opened when pressing and holding on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

Touch Off or On.

Passive Door Unlock

This allows the selection of what doors will unlock when using the button on the driver door to unlock the vehicle.

Touch All Doors or Driver Door Only.

Passive Door Lock

This allows passive locking to be turned on or off and selects feedback. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

Touch Off, On with Horn Chirp, or On.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

This feature sounds an alert when the RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle. This menu also enables the Remote No Longer In Vehicle Alert.

Touch Off or On.

Seating Position

Touch and the following may display:

- Seat Entry Memory
- Seat Exit Memory

Seat Entry Memory

This feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored 1 or 2 button positions when the ignition is changed from off to on or Accessory mode. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *38*.

Touch On or Off.

Seat Exit Memory

This feature automatically recalls the previously stored exit button positions when the ignition is changed from on or ACC/ ACCESSORY to off if the driver door is open or opened. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *38*.

Touch Off or On.

Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit access to vehicle storage locations, if equipped.

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Select Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch Lock or Unlock to lock or unlock the system. Touch Back to go back to the previous menu.

The four-digit code is a secured passcode that will remain secured until the four-digits are re-entered correctly. If the four-digit passcode cannot be remembered, see your dealer who can unlock the system using a GM scan tool.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 104
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 106
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 106
Automatic Headlamp System 106
Headlamp Leveling Control . . . 107
Hazard Warning Flashers 107
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 108
Fog Lamps 108

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 109
Courtesy Lamps 109
Dome Lamps 109
Reading Lamps 109

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 110
Exit Lighting 110
Battery Power Protection 110
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 110

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the instrument panel on the outer side of the steering column.

There are four positions.

⏻ **:** Turns the exterior lamps off and deactivates AUTO mode. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate AUTO mode.

AUTO : Turns the exterior and instrument panel lamps on and off automatically depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the parking, tail, number plate and instrument panel lamps.

: Additionally turns on the headlamps.

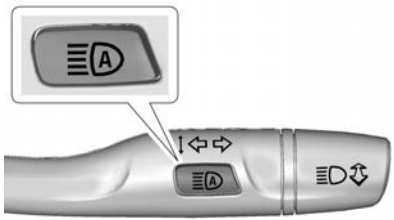
High Beam Assist

If equipped, High Beam Assist turns the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off automatically when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.



This light comes on in the instrument cluster when High Beam Assist is enabled.

Enabling High Beam Assist



Press ≡Ⓐ on the turn signal lever when it is dark outside and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO or ≡D.

Driving with High Beam Assist

The system only activates high beams when driving over 40 km/h.

The blue high-beam on light is displayed on the instrument cluster when high beams are on.

There is a sensor near the top centre of the windscreen that automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris for best system performance.

The high-beam headlamps remain on, under automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's tail lamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h.
- Use the button on the turn signal lever to disable High Beam Assist.
- The front fog lamps are turned on.

High beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect another vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps due to any of the following:

- The other vehicle's head/tail lamps are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's head/tail lamps are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's head/tail lamps cannot be detected due to dense exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- The vehicle's windscreen is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- The vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim too high and not detect headlamps and tail lamps.
- The vehicle is being driven on winding or hilly roads.

High Beam Assist may need to be disabled manually if any of the above conditions exists.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

To activate high beam:

- When the headlamps are on, push the turn signal lever away from you and release.



- The high beam light turns on in the instrument cluster.

To return to low beam:

- Push the lever again or pull it towards you and release.

To flash the high beam lamps:

- Pull the lever towards you and release.
- The lamps can be flashed even if the headlamps are off.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day.

The DRL system comes on during daylight when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

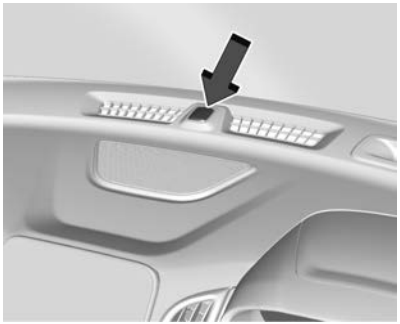
When the DRL are on, the tail lamps, park lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps are not on. The instrument cluster will be lit.

The DRL turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Lights On with Wipers

If the windscreen wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, park lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or ≡00≡ to disable this feature.

Headlamp Leveling Control



Manual Headlamp Levelling

If equipped with the manual headlamp levelling control, the knob is near the exterior lamp control. This allows the headlamp level to be adjusted to suit the vehicle load. Correct adjustment of the headlamp level can reduce the glare for other drivers.

Low beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp level.

: Turn the knob up or down to adjust the headlamps.

- 0 = Front seat occupied.
- 1 = All seats occupied.
- 2 = All seats occupied and load in the luggage compartment.
- 3 = Driver seat occupied and load in the luggage compartment.

Automatic Headlamp Levelling

If equipped, the angle of the headlamps is adjusted automatically based on vehicle load.

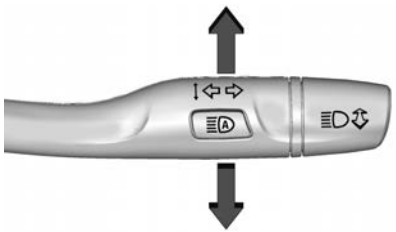
Hazard Warning Flashers



⚠ : Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble.

Press ⚠ again to turn the flashers off.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is complete. If the lever is moved momentarily to the lane change position, the arrow will flash three times.

The lever returns to its starting position when it is released.

If after signalling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb may be burnt out.

Have any burnt out bulbs replaced. If a bulb is not burnt out, check the fuse. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *247*.

Fog Lamps



The fog lamps button is on the instrument panel beside the steering wheel.

To turn on the fog lamps, the ignition and the headlamps or park lamps must be on.

: Press to turn on or off. An indicator light on the instrument cluster comes on when the fog lamps are on.

In very heavy fog, vision may be improved by having the park lamps and fog lamps on and turning the headlamps off.

Check state laws regarding the use of fog lamps when driving.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument cluster display, infotainment display and controls, steering wheel controls, and all other illuminated controls including feature status indicators can be adjusted.

The knob for this feature is on the instrument panel beside the steering column.

Push the knob to extend it and then turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to brighten or dim the lights. Push the knob back in when the desired setting is achieved.

Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened and the OFF indicator light is turned off. See *Dome Lamps* ⇨ *109*.

Dome Lamps



The dome lamp controls are in the overhead console.

To operate, press the following buttons:

OFF : Press to turn off the dome lamps when a door is open. An indicator light on the button will turn on when the dome lamp override is activated. Press OFF again to deactivate this feature and the indicator light will turn off. The dome lamps will come on when doors are opened.

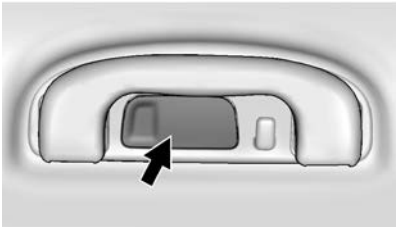
ON/OFF : Press to turn the dome lamps on manually.

Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps in the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened.



Press the lamp lenses to manually turn the front reading lamps on or off.



Press the lamp lens to manually turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lamps turn on briefly at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. When a door is opened, the interior lamps come on. They stay on for about 20 seconds. When all of the doors have been closed or the ignition is turned on, they gradually fade out.

This feature can be changed. See “Vehicle Locator Lights” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Exit Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lamps come on at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when the driver door is opened after the ignition is turned off. The dome lamp comes on after the ignition is turned off. The exterior lamps and dome lamp remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

To turn the exterior lamps turn off immediately, turn the exterior lamp control to off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Battery Power Protection

This feature shuts off the interior lamps if they are left on for more than 10 minutes when the ignition is off. This helps to prevent the battery from running down.

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off if the park lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10 minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the off position and then back to the park lamp or headlamp position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the ignition must be on or in Accessory mode.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Overview 111
Steering Wheel Controls 114
Using the System 115
Software Updates 117

Radio
AM-FM-DAB Radio 118
Radio Data System (RDS) 120
Radio Reception 120
Multi-Band Antenna 121

Audio Players
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 121
USB Port 121
Auxiliary Jack 125
Bluetooth Audio 125

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 126
Maps 129
Navigation Symbols 129
Destination 130
Global Positioning System (GPS) 135
Vehicle Positioning 136
Problems with Route Guidance 136
If the System Needs Service 137
Map Data Updates 137
Database Coverage Explanations 137

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 137

Phone
Bluetooth 143
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 148

Settings
Settings 149

Trademarks and Licence Agreements
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 154

Introduction

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some features when driving. These features may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment

features are also available through the instrument cluster and steering wheel controls.

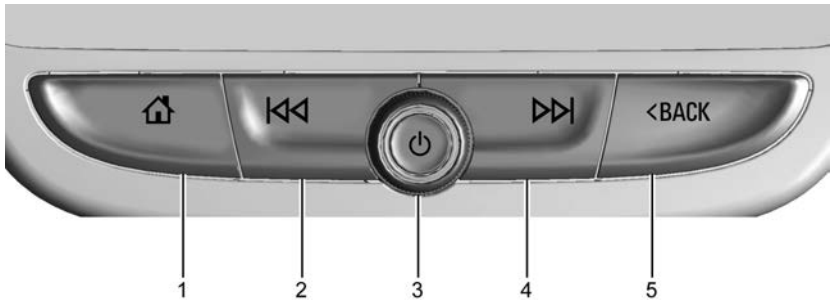
Before driving:

- Become familiar with the system operation and infotainment display and controls.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up mobile phone and mobile device numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single control or by using a single voice command.

Infotainment System

The infotainment system is controlled by directly using the infotainment display, or with the steering wheel controls, voice recognition or the control panel on the instrument panel under the infotainment display. Also see *Using the System* ⇨ *115*, *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *114*, *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *137*.

Control Panel



1. ⌂ (Home Page)
2. ⏮ (Seek)
3. ⏻ (Power)
4. ⏭ (Seek)
5. < BACK

1. ⌂

   Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” later in this section.

2. ⏮

   Radio: Press and release to go to the previous station. Press and hold to fast seek the next strongest previous station. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *118*.

   USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *121* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *125*.

3. ⏻ (Power)

   Press to turn the power on.

   Press and hold to turn the power off.

   Press to mute/unmute the system when on.

   Turn to decrease or increase the volume.

   When the power is on and the system is not muted, a quick status pane will display when ⏻ is pressed. Pressing ⏻ will mute the system and trigger this pane to show. A long press is required to actually power down the system.

4. ⏭

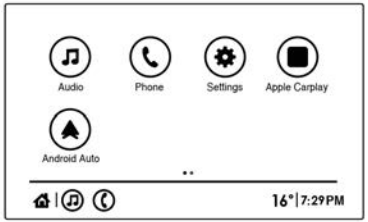
   Radio: Press and release to go to the next station. Press and hold to fast seek the next track or strongest station.

   USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *121* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *125*.

5. < BACK

   Press to return to the previous display in a menu.

Home Page



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications may be disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Swipe left or right across the screen to access the pages. See “Infotainment Gestures” in *Using the System* ⇨ *115*.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the display toward the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.

Steering Wheel Controls



Some of the audio controls can be adjusted on the steering wheel.

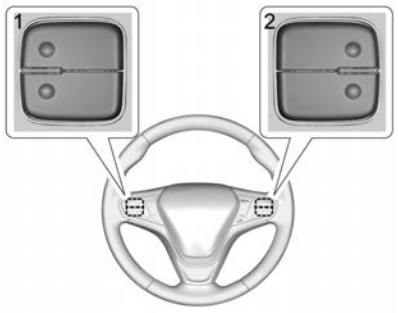
: Press to answer an incoming call or start voice recognition. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *143*. Press and hold to activate Bluetooth voice pass-thru. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *137*.

: Press to reject an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

◁ **or** ▷ **:** Press to go to the previous or next menu on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

△ **or** ▽ **:** Press to go to the next or previous list on the DIC.

✓ **:** Press to select a highlighted menu option.



Favourite and volume switches may be fitted on the back of the steering wheel.

1. Favourite: When on a radio source, press to select the next or previous favourite. When on a media source, press to select the next or previous track.
2. Volume: Press to increase or decrease the volume.

Using the System

Audio

Touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Examples of available sources are AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Phone

Touch the Phone icon to display the phone main page. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *143*.

Nav

If equipped, touch the Nav icon to display the navigation map. See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *126*.

Users

Touch the Users icon to sign in or create a new user profile and follow the on-screen instructions.

Only four user profiles can be active at one time in the vehicle. It may be necessary to remove a profile from the menu before creating or signing into an existing profile. The removed profile can be logged into at a later time.

Settings

Touch the Settings icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ *149*.

Apple CarPlay

Touch the Apple CarPlay icon to activate Apple CarPlay after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *148*.

Android Auto

Touch the Android Auto icon to activate Android Auto after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *148*.

Camera

If equipped, touch the Camera icon to access the surround vision system application. See *Surround Vision System* ⇨ *196*.

Shortcut Tray

The shortcut tray is near the bottom of the display. It shows up to four applications.

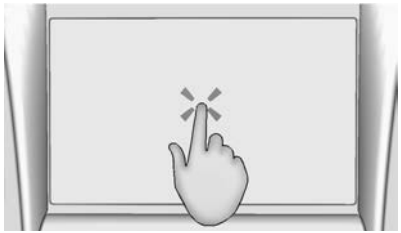
Infotainment Display Features

Infotainment display features show on the display when available. When a feature is unavailable, it may grey out. When a feature is selected, it may highlight.

Infotainment Gestures

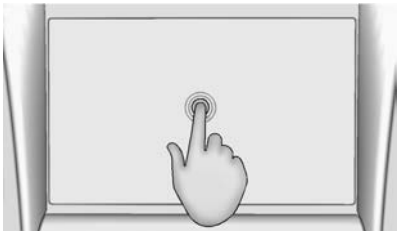
Use the following finger gestures to control the infotainment system.

Touch/Tap



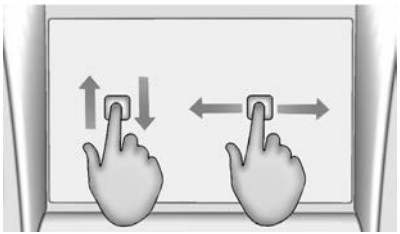
Touch/Tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.

Touch and Hold



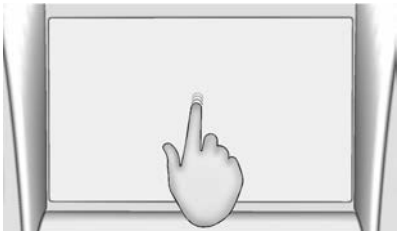
Touch and hold can be used to start another gesture, or to move or delete an application.

Drag



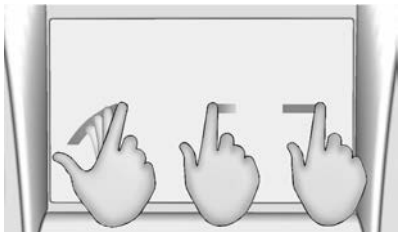
Drag is used to move applications on the Home Page, or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when vehicle is parked and not in motion.

Nudge



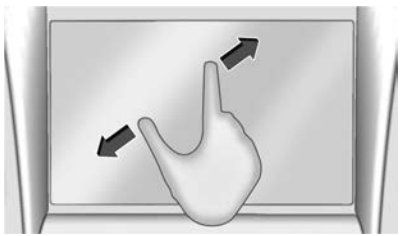
Nudge is used to move items a short distance on a list or a map. To nudge, hold and move the selected item up or down to a new location.

Fling or Swipe



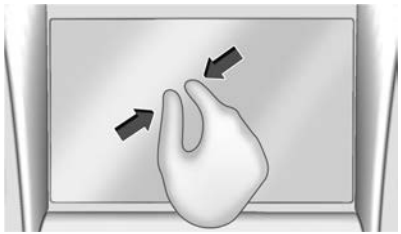
Fling or swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the infotainment display then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

Spread



Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.

Pinch



Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Software Updates

See your dealer for information about software updates.

Radio

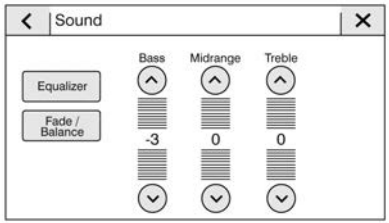
AM-FM-DAB Radio

Playing the Radio

From the Home Page, touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Choose from the three most recently used sources listed at the left side of the display or touch ⌄ to display a list of available sources. Examples of available sources are: AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), USB, and Bluetooth.

Infotainment System Sound Menu

From any of the audio source main pages, touch (Sound) to display the following:



Equaliser : Touch to adjust Bass, Midrange and Treble using the controls on the infotainment display.

Fade/Balance : Touch to adjust by using the controls on the infotainment display or by tapping/ dragging the crosshair on the display.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

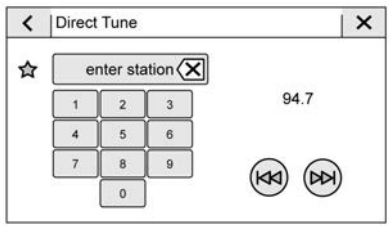
From the AM, FM, or DAB option, press ⏮ or ⏭ on the instrument panel to search for the previous or next strong station.

Browsing Stations

From the AM, FM, or DAB display, touch (Browse) on the infotainment display to list all available stations. Navigate up and down through all stations by scrolling the list. Touch the station that you want to listen to. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favourite.

If equipped, touch Update Station List to update the active stations in your area.

Direct Tune



Access Direct Tune by touching (Tune) on the infotainment display to source AM, FM, or DAB and bring up the keypad. Navigate up and down

through all frequencies using the arrows on the right side of the display. Directly enter a station using the keypad. When a new station is entered, the information about that station displays on the right side. This information will update with each new valid frequency. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favourite.

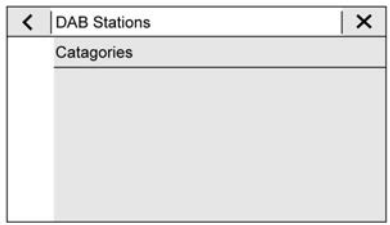
The keypad will grey out entries that do not contribute to a valid frequency and will automatically place a decimal point within the frequency number.

Touch (X) to delete one number at a time. Touch and hold (X) to delete all numbers.

A valid AM, FM, DAB station will automatically tune to the new frequency but not close the Direct Tune display. Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display or ✕ to exit out of Direct Tune.

The tune arrows on the right side of the Direct Tune display tune through the complete station list one station step at a time per touch. A touch and hold advances through stations quickly.

Categories



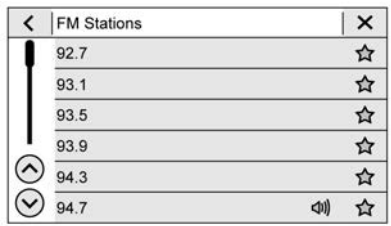
If equipped, categories displays a list of the available radio stations sorted into their type; e.g. Pop, Classic, Information, etc.

Touch Categories at the top of the Browse menu and then touch a category name to display a list of stations available in that category. Touching a station will tune the radio to that station.

Storing Radio Station Favourites

Favourites are displayed in the area at the top of the display.

Touch and hold a preset to store the current station as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite station.



Favourites can also be stored by touching ☆ in a station list. This will highlight indicating that it is now stored as a favourite.

The number of favourites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in Settings in the System tab under Favourites and then Set Number of Audio Favourites. It can also be

adjusted in Settings in the Apps tab under Audio and then Set Number of Audio Favourites.

Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has an RDS. RDS features are available for use only on FM and DAB stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Display messages from radio stations

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

The RDS is always on. When information is broadcast from the current FM station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen.

When RDS signal information has been detected, the fields will be updated on the display to show the RDS data. The radio text will be updated any time new information is received.

The RDS fields on the display will show in the order of:

- Frequency and /or RDS-PSN.
- RDS text line one is the information provided by the broadcast.
- RDS text line two and three is RDS text. Line three is used only if necessary, to wrap over from the text on line two.

If the RDS text information overflows from line two and three, the previous information given on line two and three will clear. The overflow of information will finish starting from the previously used line two and then if necessary, line three.

If an RDS text update occurs during the paging, the display fields are cleared and the new information is displayed, beginning on line two.

Once the entire broadcast text is finished paging, the amount of text that can fit in lines two and three will be displayed and an ellipsis will indicate further text exists.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a universal broadcast system that indicates stations by the radio program name on the infotainment display. The DAB signal produces a constant volume and is not affected by interference from nearby frequencies. The reception quality of DAB improves if the signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings. If the DAB signal is unclear, reception is interrupted completely.

Mobile Device Usage

Mobile device usage, such as making or receiving calls, charging, or just having the mobile device on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the mobile device or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

The roof antenna is for AM, FM, DAB, and GPS (Global Positioning System). Keep it clear of obstructions for clear reception. If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

Audio Players

Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices

When using media devices such as USB or mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance. Avoid use if the content or origin cannot be trusted.

USB Port

Audio stored on a USB device may be listened to.



The vehicle has a USB port with an A-type and a C-type USB outlet located at the front of the centre console. These outlets are for data and charging. A USB port with one or two A-type USB outlets may also be fitted at the rear of the centre console for charging only.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Audio extensions supported by the USB may include:

- FLAC
- MP3
- AAC
- OGG
- 3GP

Gracenote

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

My Media Library

MyMedia is only available when more than one indexed device is connected. It allows access to content from all indexed media sources. MyMedia will show as an available source in the Source page.

USB MP3 Player and USB Devices

The USB MP3 players and USB devices connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).

To play a USB device:

1. Connect the USB.
2. Touch the Audio icon from the Home Page.
3. Touch the ⌄ (More) option and then touch the USB device.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▷ : Touch to play the current media source.

❙❙ : Touch to pause playback of the current media source.

⏮ :

- Touch to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.
- Touch and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ :

- Touch to seek to the next track.

- Touch and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

Shuffle : Touch the shuffle icon to play music in random order.

USB Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *118*.

USB Browse Menu

When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media displays, the up and down arrows, and A-Z appear on the left side. Select A-Z to view a display that will show all letters of the alphabet and touch the letter to go to.

Touch the up or down arrow to move the list up and down.

Touch the Browse option and the following may display:

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Touch a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Examples of supported Playlist extensions are m3u and pls.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Touch an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then touch a song from the list.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, touch a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

iTunes Radio:

Touch to view iTunes Radio on the iPhone to get a list of stations.

Compilations:

Touch to view the Compilations on the USB.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch a Composer to view a list of albums by that composer.

3. Touch an album or All Songs to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders:

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts:

Touch to view the podcasts on the connected Apple device and get a list of podcast episodes.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the Apple device.
2. Touch an audiobook to get a list of chapters.
3. Touch the chapter from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

Examples of file systems supported by the USB may include:

- FAT32
- NTFS
- HFS+

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Supported Apple Devices

To view supported devices, see your dealer.

Storing and Recalling Media Favourites

To store media favourites, touch Browse on the infotainment display to show a list of media types.

Select from one of the following Browse options to save a favourite:

Playlists : Touch ☆ next to any playlist to store the playlist as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite playlist. The first song in the playlist begins to play.

Artists : Touch ☆ next to any artist to store the artist as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite artist. The first song in the artist list begins to play.

Songs : Touch ☆ next to any song to store the song as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite song.

Albums : Touch ☆ next to any album to store the album as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite album. The first song in the album list begins to play.

Genres : Touch ☆ next to any genre to store the genre as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite genre. The first song of the genre begins to play.

Podcasts : Touch ☆ next to any podcast to store the podcast as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite podcast. The podcast begins to play.

Audiobooks : Touch ☆ next to any audiobook to store the audiobook as a favourite. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite audiobook. The first chapter in the audiobook begins to play.

Media Playback and Mute

USB playback will be paused if the system is muted. If the steering wheel mute control is pressed again, playback will resume.

If the source is changed while in mute, playback resumes and audio will unmute.

Auxiliary Jack



The vehicle has an auxiliary input jack located at the front of the centre console. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player/smart phone

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack.

Connect and control an auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, touch ⌄ (More) on the infotainment display and touch AUX to make the source active.

Shuffle and Browse are not available in the AUX source menu.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. For details on pairing a device, see *Bluetooth* ⇨ *143*

Volume and song selection may be controlled by using the infotainment controls or the mobile device.
If Bluetooth is selected and no volume is present, check the volume setting on both your mobile device and the infotainment system.

Music can be launched by touching Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display or by touching ⌄ (More) and then touching the Bluetooth device.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Turn on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, touch the Audio icon from the Home Page, then touch Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display.

Bluetooth Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *118*.

Manage Bluetooth Devices

From the Home Page:

1. Touch the Audio icon.
2. Touch ⌄ (More).
3. Touch Bluetooth.
4. Touch Devices to add or delete devices.

When touching Bluetooth, the radio may not be able to launch the audio player on the connected device to start playing. When the vehicle is not moving, use the mobile device to begin playback.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth as a source, the radio may show as paused on the display. Press play on the device or touch ▷ on the display to begin playback.

Browse functionality will be provided where supported by the Bluetooth device. This media content will not be part of the MyMedia source mode.

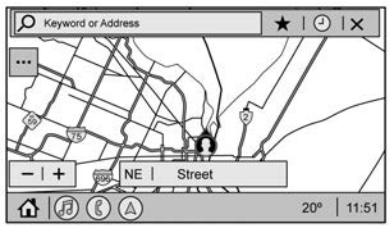
Some smart phones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the radio. When the radio receives this information, it will check to see if any is available and display it. For more information about supported Bluetooth features, see your dealer or go to the owners section at www.holden.com.au

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

If equipped, launch the Navigation application by touching the Nav icon on the Home Page or on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the infotainment display.

Navigation Map View



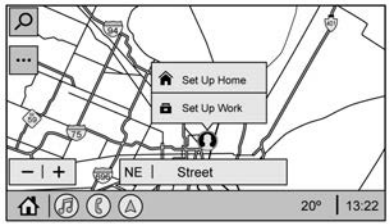
After opening the Nav application for the first time, the application opens in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. When the vehicle is stopped, the search bar will appear along the top of the navigation map view. Manually close the search bar by touching ✕.

When the vehicle is moving, the (Search) icon will replace the search bar to maximise the full map view.

Set Up My Places

From the Nav application, set up Home and Work addresses to enable one-touch navigation. To set up Home and Work addresses, touch ••• and select Settings. Choose Set Up My Places; Automatically show My Places on startup should be on by default. Select and enter Home and/or Work address and save.

Touch (current vehicle position). This symbol can also be used to set up Home and Work addresses by touching the bubbles above it. Touch the pop-up message that appears. The message will automatically close after 15 seconds of inactivity.



To turn off the My Places bubbles, switch Automatically show My Places on startup to Off.

If the vehicle's system is not signed into a customised profile, the current location icon uses a generic symbol. Once signed into a customised profile, the current location symbol will show a customised icon. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ *129*.

Touch the drive To Home or drive To Work pop-up to start either route. Only one will show if the vehicle is already at Home or Work.

Map and Navigation Settings

Touch ••• while in the map view to display options. The following may display:

- 3D Heading Up, 2D Headings Up, 2D North Up
- Show on Map
- Road Tracing (recording)
- Settings
- Edit Destination (if a route has been set)
- Avoid (if a route has been set)

Touch Settings to view Map and Navigation Settings. The following may display:

- Set Up My Places. See “Set Up My Places” previously in this section.
- Map Preferences
- Route Preferences
- Navigation Voice Control
- Alert Preferences
- Manage History
- About

To exit out of a list, touch X in the top right corner to return to the main map view.

Make sure to set up preferences before setting a destination and starting active guidance.

Map Preferences

Touch to choose between basic map feature configurations:

Map Colours:

- Auto – Touch to automatically change modes based on lighting conditions.
- Day (Light)
- Night (Dark)

3D Landmarks (Default is On) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display all 3D Landmarks on the map depending on the zoom level.

3D Buildings (Default is Off) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display all of the possible 3D building shapes on the map depending on the zoom level.

Show Terrain in 3D (Default is Off) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display terrain information on the map in 3D view.

Auto-Zoom (Default is On) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will automatically adjust the zoom level when the vehicle is approaching a turn. After the turn is completed, the system automatically brings the zoom back to the originally set level. If the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn occurring shortly after, the Auto-Zoom will remain on until both turns are completed.

Route Preferences

Touch to access the Route Preferences. The choices are:

- Preferred Route – Choose from two different route options: Fastest or Eco-Friendly.
  - Fastest would be the route with the shortest drive time.
  - Eco-Friendly would be the most fuel-efficient route.
- Avoid on Route – Choose any of the road features to avoid while on route, such as:
  - Highways
  - Unsealed Roads
  - Ferries
  - Carpool Lanes
  - Toll Roads
  - Tunnels

Navigation Voice Control

Touch to access the voice control setting display.

- Navigation Volume – To adjust the volume level, touch the up and down arrows. If the voice guidance prompt is being heard, volume can also be adjusted using the knob on the instrument panel or the volume switch on the steering wheel.
- Navigation Voice Prompt Level during a Call. Options available are:
  - Full Prompt (Selected by default)
  - Tone Only
  - None

Alert Preferences

Set alerts on or off during both inactive and active guidance views. The following alerts may be available:

- Road Safety Alerts
- Traffic Camera Alerts
- Country Town Entry Alerts

Manage History

Touch Manage History to access the History options:

- Clear Recent Destinations – Touch ⊗ to clear the recent destinations.
- Clear Search History – Touch ⊗ to clear the search history.

About

Touch to display software information, such as:

- Telenav
- Navigation Version

Maps

The Nav application requires a map database to run. It is stored on an SD card that is connected to the infotainment system. If the map database is not available, a missing SD card error message will be displayed.

SD Card Error Messages

The SD card only works for one unique vehicle. The SD card must pass authentication verification to be used for that specific vehicle. Potential error scenarios and messages include:

- The SD card has initialised for the first time: “Once initialised, this SD card can only be used for navigation in this vehicle.”
- The SD card is not working properly: “SD card is not functioning properly. (Error Code).”
- The SD card is not paired with the existing system: “This SD card is not valid in this vehicle for navigation. See Owner's Manual for more detail or visit your dealer. (Error Code).”
- The SD card has been removed from the slot: “SD card has been removed. (Error Code).”

Touch Continue to resume after the initialisation error message. For the other messages, touch OK to return to the Home Page.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear in the Nav application.



This indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.



This is the vehicle's current location icon during inactive guidance mode. Once a user profile is created, the current location icon can be customised.

This icon indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.



The destination pin marks the location of the final destination. Touch the pin to view the destination address or to add it or remove it from the Favourites list. Hide the information by touching the pin one more time. It will automatically time out if no action is taken.



Points of Interest (POIs) are places of interest for parking and petrol stations, etc.



The progress bar provides an overview of the route progress. As the route proceeds, the vehicle icon moves up the bar.

Touch the icon to zoom out on the map and view the entire route. Touch it again to return to the previous view.

View the drive time by touching the estimated time of arrival (ETA).

Current Location

When the vehicle is parked and not in a Navigation session, the user icon is centred on the map view, highlighting the current location.

Destination

Waypoints

Add up to five waypoints, which are additional destinations, along the route. To add an additional stop or waypoint:

- From active guidance, touch .
- Search for the destination using One-Box, Voice search, or the Quick Category icons.
- Choose search results Along Route, Nearby, or Near Destination.
- Choose the desired waypoint and touch Add to Trip or replace the current destination by touching New Destination.

Route options are not available for waypoints.

Arriving at a Waypoint

When approaching a waypoint, the system will display a Destination Arrival view. To continue on to the next destination touch the Drive to message on the infotainment display.

If the vehicle passes the waypoint or gets out of the current route, the system will automatically reroute back to this waypoint. At the same time, it will show a Drive to icon along with the next waypoint address so the current waypoint can be skipped and guidance can resume to the next waypoint or destination.

Editing a Waypoint

When waypoints are added during active guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or the order to be changed. To edit a waypoint:

1. Touch ⋯.
2. Touch Edit Destinations.
   - Modify destination order by touching and holding the arrow until it is highlighted. Drag to move the waypoint up or down the list.
   - Delete a waypoint by touching 🗑. A pop-up will appear to confirm waypoint removal. Once the request is confirmed, the system will remove the address from the destinations list. Touch ✕ on the top right corner so the system can recalculate the route.

     If there is only one address in the destinations list, the system will disable the move and delete functions. The system will not allow the final destination to be deleted.

Map Information

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for map information. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas. See *Maps* ⇨ *129*.

Zoom Control

The zoom control display is shown on the map view. A few ways to zoom in or out are:

- Touch + or – to zoom in or out on the map.
- Double tap with one finger to zoom in or single tap with two fingers to zoom out on the map.

- Use the index finger and thumb to zoom out by pinching and then zoom in by spreading those two fingers on the map.

Map Gestures and Map Scale

Use the following gestures on the infotainment display to adjust the map scale and display options.

- Pinch to zoom in or out.
- Pan the map.
- Use two fingers to tilt down and change from 2D to 3D. Tilt up to change back to 2D.
- Rotate the map.

See *Using the System* ⇨ *115*.

Mute

When in active guidance, the audio prompts while using navigation can be muted. Touch the speaker icon on the right side of the upper bar. A slash will appear on the speaker to indicate voice guidance is muted.

Active Guidance View

When a destination is chosen and a navigation session is active, the navigation system enters into an Active Guidance View (AGV).

Map Orientation

Touch the Options icon on the map to access map orientation settings. Map orientation is 3D Heading Up by default.

Available settings are:

- 3D Heading Up (Default): 3D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D Heading Up: 2D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D North Up: 2D map with North pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will shift as the vehicle turns left and right.

Touch the icon to change the map type. The icon and label will also update accordingly.

Depending on the zoom level of the 2D Heading Up and 3D Heading Up maps, the system may automatically switch to the 2D North Up map.

When in AGV , the entire route can be viewed in 2D North Up by touching the traffic bar. The map will zoom out and readjust to display the full route. When in 2D North Up Route View, the Recentre icon will appear in the middle of the display. Touch either the Recentre icon or the traffic bar again to return to the previous view, either 2D or 3D.

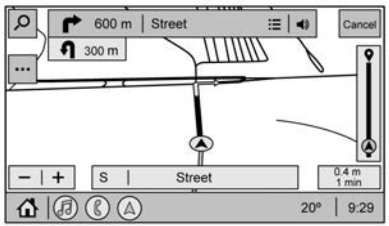
Lane Guidance

The map will display the lane information for the upcoming manoeuvre if it is available.

Junction View

When a vehicle is on the highway and approaching the exit, an image displays the lane that the vehicle must stay in to complete the next manoeuvre.

Quick-Turn View



When the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn following in quick succession, a quick-turn list appears below the primary turn indicator. An audio prompt will announce the quick turn.

Auto-Zoom

When approaching a manoeuvre, the map will automatically zoom in to show both the vehicle icon and the upcoming manoeuvre to give a better view of the manoeuvre. Once the manoeuvre is complete, the system will zoom back to the previous zoom level. Touch ••• on the map to access Settings, then touch Map Configuration to access Auto-Zoom. This feature can be enabled or disabled.

Route List

Touch the menu option next to the next turn street name to display the Route List.

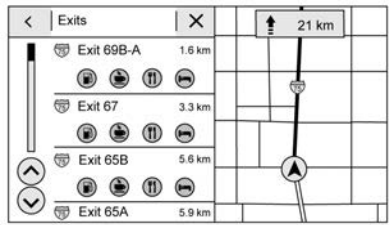
The Route List displays the turns and directions from the current location to the final destination.

Editing the Route List

The Route List can be edited by choosing EDIT, which expands the list to fill the display and enters the Edit Mode. While in Edit Mode, an unwanted route segment can be removed from the route by touching 🗑 next to the segment. A pop-up appears to confirm segment removal.

When the route segment has been removed, all segments are replaced by an activity indicator while the new route is recalculated. When the recalculation is complete, the activity indicator is replaced with the new route segments.

Highway Exit Lists



Touch the highway exit icon to open the Exit list. This icon displays next to the current street name near the bottom of the display. The icon only appears when on a highway with defined exits.

While travelling on roads with designated exits, an Exit list may be available. The Exit list displays the exit number, distance to the exit from the current vehicle position, and convenience stops that may be available, such as fuel, coffee, food, and lodging.

Next Manoeuvre Menu

When in Active Guidance, the Next manoeuvre Turn Arrow, Street Name, and manoeuvre Distance are

shown in the Next manoeuvre at the top of the display overlaying the map. ETA, Distance to Destination, and Traffic Indicator are displayed in a panel pinned on the right of the display.

Navigation Next Turn Manoeuvre Alert

If the Navigation application is not open when a near manoeuvre prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. Touch the alert to go to the main navigation view or touch ✕ to dismiss the alert.

Repeat Voice Guidance



This symbol indicates the next guidance manoeuvre. Touch it to repeat the last spoken guidance instruction.

End Route

Touch Cancel at the top right corner to end active guidance and return to inactive guidance. If active guidance is cancelled before the destination has been reached, a pop-up option to Resume Trip will appear.

Resume Trip

The trip can be resumed if it was cancelled by touching the Resume Trip pop-up option.

If the system has determined that the destination has been reached, either because the arrival view displayed or the destination has been passed, the Resume Trip option will not appear.

Favourites

The navigation favourites can have contacts, addresses, or POIs that have been saved through the favourite icon on the details view.

Accessing Favourites

To manage favourites, touch the Search icon on the Home Page. Touch Favourites to access the Favourites option.

In the Nav application, view the Favourites list by touching ☆ in the search bar along the top of the Nav map view. If the search bar is closed, touch 🔍 and select ☆.

Saving Favourites

Favourites can be added from a number of the system's applications. Touch the favourites icon to save content as a favourite.

Renaming Navigation Favourites

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page and touch the System tab.
2. Touch Favourites to access the Manage Favourites option.
3. Touch a saved Navigation favourite to access the edit icon. Touch the edit icon to rename the favourite.

4. Touch Save to store the renamed favourite.

Recents

Touch ◷ to access a list of recent destinations.

Recentre Position Icon

Touch the Recentre Position arrow in the middle of the map view to reset the map to the current location.

Last Parked Location

The Last Parked Location is the last location the vehicle engine was turned off. That location is displayed in the first row of the Recents list. Touching the last Parked Location shows the Address Details view to either save the address or drive to it. The Last Parked Location can be deleted by entering the Edit display. Once the Last Parked Location is deleted, it no longer appears in the Recents list, unless the vehicle is started at that location again.

Show POI Icons

To see the POI categories, touch Options, then touch Show on Map. Up to eight categories of icons can be selected.

Search

Touch Search on the infotainment display to open the search display. It has a search field entry box, quick category icon shortcuts, recents icon, favourites icon, and keyboard.

Auto Complete

Enter a partial location in the field entry box on the search display. Auto complete will attempt to complete the destination based on what is being entered. Touch the suggested item to search.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears in the status bar.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *136* and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ *137*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long, straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains are installed on the vehicle.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery has been disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.

- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *129*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see your dealer.

Map Data Updates

Map updates may be available after the time of purchase of your vehicle. To enquire about the availability of map updates and associated costs, contact your Holden dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *137*.

Voice Recognition

If equipped, voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio, and mobile device applications. This feature can be started by pressing on the steering wheel or by touching on the infotainment display with the navigation application.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two touches, such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device, would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down, are audio features that are easily performed by touching one or two options, and are not supported by voice commands.

In general there are flexible ways to speak commands for completing tasks.

Try stating a One-Shot command, such as “Directions to address <house number, street, city>”. Another example of a One-Shot Destination Entry command is, “Directions to Place of Interest at <hotel>”. If these commands do not work, try saying, “Take me to Place of Interest” or “Find address” and the system will walk you through by asking additional questions.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialised. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialisation may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel controls to activate voice recognition.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing again.

   For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press again and wait for the beep.

There are three voice prompt modes supported:

- Informative verbal prompts: This type of prompt will provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: This type of prompt will provide simple instructions about what can be stated.
- Auto informative prompts: This type of prompt plays during the first few speech sessions, then automatically switches to the short prompt after some experience has been gained through using the system.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Infotainment Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there may be corresponding options showing on the displays. A selection can be made by manually touching the option, or by speaking the number for the option to select. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands while some manual commands may expedite a task. If a selection is made using a manual control, the voice recognition dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection were made using a voice command. Once the system completes the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.
- Press ↩ on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display from where voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are naturally stated in sentence form or direct commands that state the application and the task.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt before saying a command or reply.
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.
- Use direct commands without a lot of extra words. For example, “Call <name> at work,” “Play” followed by the artist or song name, or “Tune” followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations can be made in a single command using keywords. A few examples are: “I want directions to an address,” “I need to find a Place of Interest or (POI)” or “Find contact.”

  The system responds by requesting more details. For other POIs, say the name of a category like “Restaurants,” “Shopping Malls,” or “Hospitals.”

Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be “Call <number>”. Examples of these direct commands are shown on most of the displays while a voice session is active. If “Phone” or “Phone Commands,” is spoken, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered to make a call.

If a mobile phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example “Call <name> at work.”

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list.

When a display contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other displays. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a display during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt “Please select

manually or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to try again."

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The display returns to the display where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say "Back" or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous display.

If in voice recognition, and "Back" is spoken all the way back to the starting display, and then "Back" is spoken one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say "Help" on any voice recognition display and the help prompt for the display is played.

Touching while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

If browsing the audio sources when voice is touched, the voice recognition commands for AM, FM, and DAB are available.

"Switch to AM" : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

"Switch to FM" : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

"Switch to DAB" : Switch bands to DAB and tune to the last DAB radio station.

"Tune to <AM frequency> AM" : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like "nine fifty").

"Tune to <FM frequency> FM" : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like "one oh one point one").

"Tune to <DAB station name> DAB" : Tune to the radio station name.

Voice Recognition for Audio My Media

The available voice recognition commands for [browsing] MyMedia are:

"Play Artist" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

"Play Artist <artist name>" : Begin playback of a specific artist.

"Play Album" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

"Play Album <album name>" : Begin playback of a specific album.

"Play Song" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

"Play Song <song name>" : Begin playback of a specific song, if available.

“Play Genre” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

“Play Genre <genre name>” : Begin playback of a specific genre.

“Play Playlist” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

“Play Playlist <playlist name>” : Begin playback of a specific playlist.

“Play <device name>” : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name showing on the display when the device is first selected as an audio source.

“Play Chapter” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Chapter <chapter name>” : Begin playback of a specific chapter.

“Play Audiobook” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific audiobook.

“Play Audiobook <audiobook name>” : Begin playback of a specific audiobook.

“Play Episode” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

“Play Episode <episode name>” : Begin playback of a specific episode.

“Play Podcast” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific podcast.

“Play Podcast <podcast name>” : Begin playback of a specific podcast.

“My Media” : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of files by voice at the highest level if the number of files exceeds the maximum limit.

Changes to voice commands due to media content limits are:

- Files including other individual files of all media types such as songs, audiobook chapters, podcast episodes, and videos.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of files and albums is less than 12,000. When the number of files connected to the system is between 12,000 and 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like “Play <song name>”.

The restriction is that the command “Play Song” must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 12,000 albums, but less than 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, “Play <album name>”. The command “Play Album” must first be spoken; the

system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of files has exceeded approximately 24,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 12,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initialising process.

Voice recognition performance will degrade to some extent based on many factors when adding large amounts of data to recognise. If this is the case, perhaps accessing songs through playlists or artist name would work better.

Voice Recognition for Navigation

“Navigation” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Navigation Commands” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Address” : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, city, and country.

“Place of Interest” : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name.

The name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as restaurants, hotels, or banks.

“Navigate to Contact” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination contact name.

“Cancel Route” : End route guidance.

“Take Me Home” : Create a route to a stored home location.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

“Call <contact name>” : Initiate a call to a stored contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

“Call <contact> At Home,” “At Work,” “On Mobile,” or “On Other” : Initiate a call to a stored contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <mobile phone number>” : Initiate a call to a mobile phone number of seven digits, 10 digits, or three digit emergency numbers.

“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow the instructions on the radio display.

“Redial” : Initiate a call to the last dialled number.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different connected mobile phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begin a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialling the number.

Bluetooth Voice Recognition (Pass-thru)

Press and hold on the steering wheel controls for longer than one second to access Bluetooth Voice Recognition/Siri Eyes Free.

Bluetooth voice recognition is not available during an active phone projection session, such as Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Phone

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” later in this section.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in ACC/ ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m. Not all mobile phones support all functions and not all mobile phones work with the Bluetooth system. See your dealer for more information about compatible mobile phones, or go to the Owners section at www.holden.com.au.

Controls

Use the controls on the instrument panel and the steering wheel controls to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

: Press to answer incoming calls. Hold to start voice recognition on your connected Bluetooth mobile phone.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System* ⇨ *115*.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth mobile phone system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. The volume level while on a mobile phone call can be adjusted by pressing the steering wheel controls or the volume control on the instrument panel. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The volume cannot be lowered beyond a certain level.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the phone.

Pairing Information

- If no mobile phone has been connected, the Phone main page on the infotainment display will show the Connect Phone option. Touch this option to connect. Another way to connect is to touch the Phones tab at the top right of the display and then touch Add Phone.
- A Bluetooth smartphone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a smartphone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the phone changes or it is deleted from the system.
- If multiple paired phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired phone that is set to First to Connect. If there is no phone set to First to Connect, it will link to the phone which was used last. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Make sure Bluetooth has been enabled on the phone before the pairing process is started.
2. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
3. Touch Phones at the top of the infotainment display. There is also a Connect Phones option

in the middle of the Phone display which will shortcut to the Phone List menu.

4. Touch Add Phone.
5. Select the vehicle name shown on the infotainment display from your phone's Bluetooth Settings list.
6. Follow the instructions on the phone to confirm the six-digit code showing on the infotainment display and touch Pair. The code on the phone and infotainment display will need to be acknowledged for a successful pair.
7. Start the pairing process on the phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process. Once the phone is paired, it will show under Connected.
8. If the vehicle name does not appear on your phone, there are a few ways to start the pairing process over.
   - Turn the phone off and then back on.
   - Go back to the beginning of the Phone menus on the infotainment display and restart the pairing process.
   - Reset the phone, but this step should be done as a last effort.
9. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, touch Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
10. Repeat Steps 1–8 to pair additional phones.

First to Connect Paired Phones

If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired phone that is set as First to Connect. To enable a paired phone as the First to Connect phone:

1. Make sure the phone is turned on.
2. Touch Settings, then touch System.
3. Touch Phones to access all paired and all connected phones.
4. Touch the information icon to the right of the phone to open the phone's settings menu.
5. Select the First to Connect option, to enable the setting for that phone.

Mobile phones can be added, removed, connected, and disconnected. A sub-menu will display whenever a request is made to add or manage phones.

Secondary Phone

A mobile phone can be enabled as a Secondary Phone by touching the information icon to the right of the paired phone name to open the

phone settings menu. If a phone is enabled as a Secondary Phone, it can connect simultaneously alongside another Bluetooth mobile phone. In doing so, the Secondary Phone will be labelled as Incoming Calls. This means the mobile phone can only receive calls. The Address Book of a Secondary Phone will not be available and hands-free outgoing calls cannot be placed using this phone.

If needed, touch the Secondary Phone while in the Phones list to swap it into the Outgoing and Incoming role. This role makes it possible to place outgoing calls from the Contacts and Recents list.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected phone to show the phone's information display.
4. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon next to the connected phone to display the phone's information display.
4. Touch Forget Device.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different mobile phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the new phone to link to from the not connected phone list. See *Settings* ⇨ *149* for more information about setting the phone as the First to Connect or as a Secondary Phone.

Switching to Handset or Hands free Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode:

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset option to switch to the handset mode.

  The mute icon will not be available or functional while Handset mode is active.
- While the active call is on the handset, touch the Handset option to switch to the hands-free mode.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal phone contact information for all mobile phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the phone settings and operation. Verify the phone supports this feature.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the phone.

The Recents menu accesses the Recents call list from your phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Contacts.
3. The Contacts list can be searched by using the first character. Touch A-Z on the infotainment display to scroll through the list of names.

   Select the name to call.
4. Touch the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recents menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Recents.
3. Touch the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialling the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Touch to start dialling the number.

Searching Contacts Using the Keypad

To search for contacts using the keypad:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter partial phone numbers or contact names using the digits on the keypad to search.

   Results will show on the right side of the display. Touch one to place a call.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are two ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are two ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.

- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the mobile service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

Press to answer, then touch Switch on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

Press to decline, then touch Ignore on the infotainment display

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display Call View. While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the mobile service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, touch Add Call to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from Recents, Contacts, or Keypad.
3. When the second call is active, touch the merge icon to conference the three-way call together.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch next to a call to end only that call.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system. Use the Keypad to enter the number.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons are displayed on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto App to your Android smartphone from the Google Play store. There is no App required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible smartphone USB cable and plugging into the USB data port located at the front of the centre console. If equipped, the USB ports at the rear of the console are for charging only.

   For best performance it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB

cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the message “Device Projection Privacy Consent” will appear.
   - Touch Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
   - Touch Disable to remove Apple CarPlay and Android Auto capability from the vehicle Settings menu. Other functions may still work.

The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons on the Home Page will illuminate depending on the smartphone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay icon on the Home Page to launch.

Press ⌂ on the instrument panel to return to the Home Page.

Features are subject to change. For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, see your dealer.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto can be disabled from the infotainment system. To do this, touch Home, Settings, and then touch the Apps tab along the top of the display. Use the On/Off toggled to turn off Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google’s terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Settings

Depending on vehicle model, the settings menu may be organised into four categories. Select the desired category by touching System, Apps, Vehicle or Personal.

Note

This section describes the features under the System, Apps and Personal tabs. For features in the Vehicle tab see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

To access the settings menus:

1. Touch Settings on the Home Page on the infotainment display.
2. Touch the desired category to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable a feature.
5. Touch ✕ to go to the top level of the Settings menu.

System

The menu may contain the following:

Time / Date

Use the following features to set the clock:

- Automatic Time and Date: Touch Off or On to enable or disable automatic update of the time and date. When this feature is on, the time and date cannot be manually set.
- Set Time: Touch to manually set the time using the controls on the infotainment display.
- Set Date: Touch to manually set the date using the controls on the infotainment display.
- Select Time Zone: Touch to manually set the time zone. Touch a time zone from the list.
- 24-hour Format: Touch to specify the clock format shown.

  Touch Off or On to disable or enable.

Language

This will set the display language used on the infotainment display. It may also use the selected language for voice recognition and audio feedback. Touch Language and touch the appropriate language.

Phones

Touch to connect to a different mobile phone or mobile device source, disconnect a mobile phone or media device, or delete a mobile phone or media device.

Privacy

This setting enables or disables sharing vehicle location and access to various systems and Apps:

- Location Services.
- Types.
- Used by Applications.

Display

Touch and the following may display:

- Mode: This adjusts the appearance of the navigation map view and any downloaded Apps optimised for day or night time conditions. Set to Auto for the display to automatically adjust based on bright/dark conditions.

  Touch Auto, Day, or Night to adjust the display.
- Calibrate Touchscreen: Touch to calibrate the infotainment display and follow the prompts.
- Turn Display Off: Touch to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the infotainment display or press any infotainment control on the instrument panel again to turn the display on.

Sounds

Touch and the following may display:

- Maximum Startup Volume: This feature adjusts the maximum volume of the infotainment system when you start your vehicle. To set the maximum

startup volume, touch the controls on the infotainment display to increase or decrease.

- Audible Touch Feedback: This setting determines if a sound plays when touching the infotainment display or radio controls. This feature can be turned off or on.

Voice

Touch and the following may display:

- Confirm More/Less: This setting specifies how often the voice recognition system confirms commands. Touch Confirm More to have the system check with you more often before acting on your commands.
- Prompt Length: This setting specifies the amount of detail the voice recognition system provides when giving you feedback. Touch Auto to have the system automatically adjust to your speech habits. Touch Informative, Short, or Auto.
- Audio Feedback Speed: Touch Slow, Medium, or Fast to adjust how quickly the voice recognition system speaks.
- Tutorial Mode: Touch Off or On to provide tutorial feedback on the display.
- Allow Prompt Interruptions: This setting controls whether voice commands can be spoken before voice prompts finish. Turn this on to speak commands without hearing the full prompt. Speaking while the prompt is still playing will immediately stop playing the current prompt and recognise your command. Background noise may cause accidental interruptions. Touch Off or On.

Favourites

Touch and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites: Touch to display a list of Audio, Phone, and Navigation favourites. Favourites can be moved, renamed, or deleted.

  To move, touch and hold the favourite, and then drag up or down to rearrange the position.
- Set Number of Audio Favourites: Touch to select how many favourites pages can be viewed from the audio application. The Auto setting will automatically adjust this number based on the number of favourites you have saved. Touch Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40.

Vehicle Software

The following may be displayed under the Vehicle Software title.

- Updates: Touch to update the software.
- About: Touch to view the infotainment system software information.
- Running Applications: Display a list of the applications currently running.

- Return to Factory Settings: Resets all system settings to the factory default.

Apps

The menu may contain the following:

Android Auto

This feature allows you to interact directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *148*.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Apple CarPlay

This feature allows you to interact directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *148*.

Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

Audio

Depending on the current audio source, different options will be available.

Touch and the following may display:

- Tone Settings: Touch to adjust Equaliser or Fade/Balance. See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” in *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *118*.
- Auto Volume: This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed.

  Touch Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, or High.
- Manage Favourites: Touch to display a list of Audio, Mobile Devices, and Navigation favourites.

  Favourites can be moved, renamed, or deleted.

  To move, touch and hold the favourite, and then drag up or down to rearrange the position.
- Set Number of Audio Favourites: Touch to select how many favourites pages can be viewed from the audio application. The Auto setting will automatically adjust this number based on the number of favourites you have saved. Touch Auto, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, or 40.
- RDS: This allows the Radio Data System (RDS) to be turned on or off.

  Touch the controls on the infotainment display to disable or enable.
- Album Art: Select to display album art.
- Reset Music Index: This allows the music index to be reset if you are having difficulty accessing all of the media content on your device.

  Touch Yes or No.

Climate

Touch and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed: This setting specifies the amount of airflow when the climate control fan setting is Auto Fan.

  Touch Low, Medium, or High.

- Auto Demist: This setting automatically turns the front demister on when the vehicle engine is started.

  Touch to disable or enable.

- Auto Rear Demist: This setting automatically turns the rear demister on when the vehicle engine is started.

  Touch to disable or enable.

Navigation

Touch and the following may display:

- Set Up My Places
- Map Preferences
- Route Preferences
- Navigation Voice Control
- Alert Preferences
- Manage History
- About

See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *126*.

Phone

Touch and the following may display:

- My Number: Displays the mobile phone number of the Bluetooth connected device.
- Active Call View: Shows active call display when answering a call.

  Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable.

- Privacy: Only show call alerts in the instrument cluster.

  Touch Off or On.

- Sort Contacts: Touch to sort by first or last name.
- Re-sync Phone Contacts: This allows the device contacts to re-sync if you are having difficulty accessing all of the contacts on your mobile phone.
- Delete All Vehicle Contacts: Touch to delete all vehicle stored contacts.

Personal

If equipped, this menu allows different user profile settings to be added. See “Users” in *Using the System* ⇨ *115*.

The menu may contain the following:

Name

Touch to edit your user name that will be displayed in the vehicle.

Profile Picture

Touch to choose or change your profile picture.

Profile Identifiers

Touch to have the vehicle recognise the identifier you choose.

Touch Vehicle Key 1 and/or Vehicle Key 2.

If the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is lost or stolen, see your dealer.

Security

Touch to have your profile secured with a PIN. Touch No or Yes.

Delete Profile

Touch to remove the profile from the vehicle. Touch Remove or Cancel.

Trademarks and Licence Agreements



"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance. iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information see www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents

owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2014. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4–AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP:// WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

MPEG4–Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMV/WMA

This product includes technology owned by Microsoft Corporation and under a licence from Microsoft Licensing, GP. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a licence from Microsoft Corporation and/or Microsoft Licensing, GP as applicable.

Map End User License Agreement (Optional Equipment Applies Where Equipped)

END USER TERMS

The Map Data SD card (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this “End User License Agreement”) and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC (“HERE”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, mobile phones,

palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND HARMAN (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY HARMAN (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some

States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and be treated in accordance with such Notice:



NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2010 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

Further information concerning the OSS licences is shown in the infotainment display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2011, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2011, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR

CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Air Conditioning System 163
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 165

Air Vents
Air Vents 169

Maintenance
Air Intake 169
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 169
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 169
Service 169

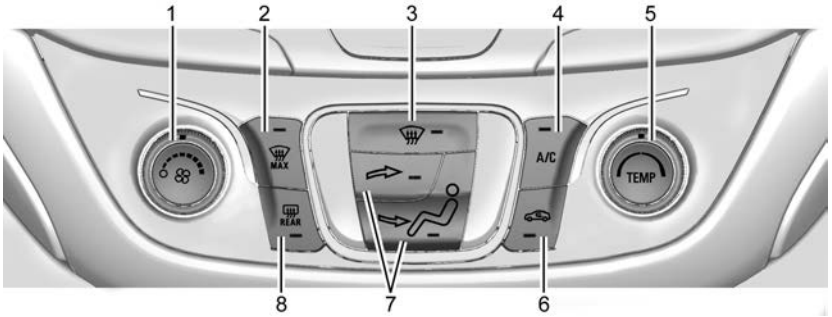
Climate Control Systems

Air Conditioning System

⚠ Danger

Do not sleep with the air conditioning or heating system on. Serious harm or death may occur due to a drop in oxygen level and/or body temperature.

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be manually controlled with this system.



1. Fan Control
2. MAX Defrost
3. Defrost/Demist
4. A/C (Air Conditioning)
5. Temperature Control
6. Recirculation
7. Air Delivery Mode Controls
8. Rear Window Demister

: Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed or turn the fan off.

TEMP : Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the temperature.

Air Delivery Mode Controls : Press , , and or a combination of the buttons to change the direction of the airflow. The indicator light in the button will turn on.

To change the current mode, select one or more of the following:

: Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windscreen.

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets.

MAX : Air is directed to the windscreen and the fan runs at a higher speed. Fog or frost is cleared from the windscreen more quickly. When the button is pressed again, the system returns to the previous mode setting.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

A/C : Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. If the climate control system is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

: Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle or to reduce the entry of outside air and odours.

Rear Window Demister

To operate, the engine must be running.

REAR : Press to turn the rear window demister on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window demister is on.

The demister can be turned off by turning the ignition off or to Accessory mode. It may also turn off automatically.

If equipped, the heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister is on, which helps clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ *26*.

Caution

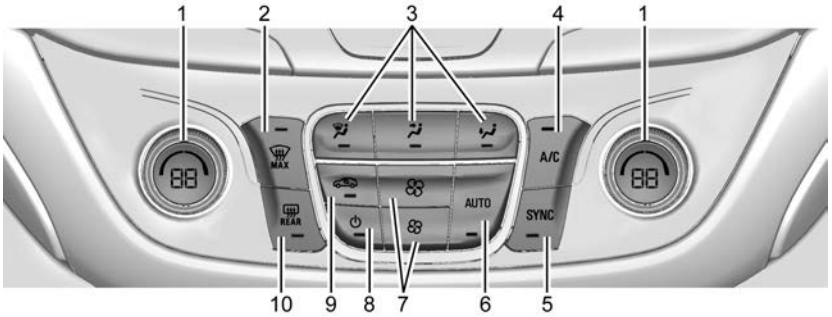
Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windscreen and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

⚠ Danger

Do not sleep with the air conditioning or heating system on. Serious harm or death may occur due to a drop in oxygen level and/or body temperature.

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be automatically controlled with this system.



1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. MAX Defrost
3. Air Delivery Mode Controls
4. A/C (Air Conditioning)
5. SYNC (Synchronised Temperature)
6. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
7. Fan Control
8. Power
9. Recirculation
10. Rear Window Demister

Automatic Operation

The system automatically heats or cools the vehicle to the desired temperature:

- Fan Speed
- Air Delivery Mode
- Air Conditioning
- Recirculation

When AUTO is lit, all four functions operate automatically. Each function can also be manually set and the selected setting is displayed. Functions not manually set will continue to be automatically controlled, even if the AUTO indicator is not lit.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilise. Adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

Driver and Passenger Temperature Control : The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the temperature.

SYNC : Press to link all climate zone settings to the driver setting. The SYNC indicator light will turn

on. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC indicator light turns off.

Manual Operation

⏻ **:** Press to turn the fan off or on. When off, no air will flow into the vehicle. Turning the fan on, pressing any other button, or turning a knob will turn the system back on using the current setting.

: Press to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan speed setting appears on the main display. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan is controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

Air Delivery Mode Controls : Press any combination of , , or to change the direction of the airflow. The indicator light in the button will turn on. The current mode appears in the display screen. Pressing any of the three buttons cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow is controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one or more of the following:

: Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windscreen.

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets.

MAX : Air is directed to the windscreen and the fan runs at a higher speed. Fog or frost is cleared from the windscreen more quickly. When the button is pressed again, the system returns to the previous mode setting.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

A/C : Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. If the climate control system is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

Pressing this button cancels automatic air conditioning and turns off the air conditioner. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs automatically as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to demist the windscreen faster.

: Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle or to reduce the entry of outside air and odours.

Auto Demist

The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. The fan speed may slightly increase to help

prevent fogging. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation.

To turn Auto Demist off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Rear Window Demister

To operate, the engine must be running.

REAR : Press to turn the rear window demister on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window demister is on.

The demister can be turned off by turning the ignition off or to Accessory mode. It may also turn off automatically.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister is on, which helps clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ *26*.

Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windscreen and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation

The climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *12*.

Sensor

The solar sensor on top of the instrument panel near the windscreen monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Air Vents

Use the louvres located on the air vents to change the direction of the airflow.

To open or close off the airflow:

- On the centre air vents, move the slider knobs up or down.
- On the outer and rear air vents, move the slider knobs right or left.

⚠ Warning

Do not attach objects to the vents. Damage or injury may occur.

Fixed Air Vents

The demister and floor-level outlets are fixed. They direct air to the windscreen, front door windows and feet.

Maintenance

Air Intake

Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen, unless recirculation has been selected.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

Pollen/dust filter

A passenger compartment air filter may be fitted to filter contaminants such as pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. This can be fitted by a Holden Dealer. See the Service and Warranty Booklet for the maintenance schedule.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen, unless recirculation has been selected.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Service

All vehicles have a label under the bonnet that identifies the refrigerant used in the vehicle. The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. The air conditioning evaporator should never be repaired or replaced by one from a salvage vehicle. It should only be replaced by a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

During service, all refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and may also create unsafe conditions based on inhalation, combustion, frostbite, or other health-based concerns.

The air conditioning system requires periodic maintenance. See your dealer for service.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 171
Steering 172
Off-Road Driving 172

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Running-in 174
Ignition Positions 174
Starting the Engine 176
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 177
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 177
Parking 178

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 179

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 179
Manual Mode 181

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 182

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 183
Electric Parking Brake 183
Brake Assist 185
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 185

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 186
Hill Descent Control (HDC) . . . 188

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 189

Driver Assistance Systems
Driver Assistance Systems . . . 192
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 193
Surround Vision System 196
Parking Assist 198
Advanced Parking Assist 202
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 204
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 206
Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System 208
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 210
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 210
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 212

Fuel
Fuel 214
Recommended Fuel 215
Filling the Tank 215

Trailer Towing
Trailer Towing 216

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 220

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before Entering the Vehicle

Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten seat belts.
5. Check that warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on. See *Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators* ⇨ *77*.

All Wheel Drive (AWD)

The vehicle may be equipped with AWD which provides a high degree of stability and grip while driving. For further information see *All-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *182*.

Brakes

- Do not let the vehicle run down hills or coast with the engine off, as the power assistance does not operate.
- Ensure that there are no obstructions that could limit brake pedal use.
- Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.
- See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *183*.

Loading the Vehicle

Loading the vehicle may change the handling when driving. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *288*.

Loose Articles

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Secure in the rear load area.

⚠ Warning

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion.

As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders.

They must be restrained from rolling around and where possible, placed in the rear load compartment of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used.

Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Tyre Grip

Tyre grip decreases when water, snow, ice, gravel and other materials are on the road. Adjust your driving to the road conditions.

- Reduce speed during wet conditions.
- Regularly check the tyres are correctly inflated. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *252*.
- Replace tyres when tread wear indicators are visible. See *Tread Depth* ⇨ *253*.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time while the vehicle is not moving, power assist may be reduced.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

Off-Road Driving

All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles may be driven off-road. See *All-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *182*.

Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles are designed primarily for on-road use or well maintained unsealed roads.

Caution

The AWD system is designed to provide additional traction and stability. The vehicle is not designed to be driven over severe four wheel drive tracks and may not have sufficient ground clearance.

Always drive with care and attention.

Travel with another vehicle when driving on remote or poor quality roads.

Before driving off-road:

- Check the fuel level. See *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *81*.
- Check all tyre pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *290*.
- Check fluids levels. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226*.

While driving off-road:

- Be alert to unexpected restrictions.
- Be aware of uncommon noises from the tyres and the engine.
- Always drive at a speed at which you are able to maintain control of the vehicle.

Caution

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can make you lose control of the steering. This could cause a collision. Therefore, when driving on-road and off-road, you and your passengers should wear seat belts.

After driving off-road:

- Remove any debris from under the vehicle or bonnet. It may become a fire hazard.
- After driving through mud or sand, clean and check the brake linings.
- Check the body, steering, suspension, wheels, tyres, exhaust system, fuel lines and cooling system.

Note

Regular off-road driving requires more frequent maintenance.

Water Crossing

Before crossing water:

- Switch off the air-conditioning.
- Do not attempt to drive through water more than 300 mm deep.
- Never drive into fast-running water. The force of the water can easily move the vehicle sideways, possibly into deeper water.
- Drive through water slowly and evenly at a speed of 10 km/h. Driving too fast may cause water to enter the engine and cause major damage.

Immediately after driving through water, drive slowly and check the brake pedal force. If the brakes are wet, press firmly several times to dry them out quickly.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Running-in

Caution

Use the following guidelines to improve vehicle performance and longevity:

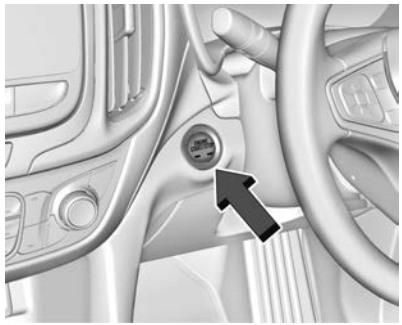
- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 800 km.
- Do not make full-throttle starts and avoid down-shifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 350 km or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet worn-in. Hard stops with new linings can result in premature wear and earlier replacement.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Follow this guideline every time new brake linings are fitted.

Ignition Positions



The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with push-button start.

Pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button cycles through three modes:

- Accessory
- Ignition on, Engine Start / Run
- Engine Stop, Ignition off

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate.

If the push-button start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the keyless entry system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

Engine Stop, Ignition Off (No Indicator Lights)

When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP once to turn the ignition off.

- If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *177*.
- If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to Accessory mode and display the message **Shift To Park** in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will turn off.

Emergency Engine Stop

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving.

If the engine must be turned off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly as this may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) and turn the ignition off.
4. Set the electric parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *183*.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over and must be turned off while driving, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

Accessory Mode (Amber Indicator Light)

This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in Accessory mode.

The ignition will switch from Accessory mode to off after five minutes to prevent battery run-down.

Start / Run (Green Indicator Light)

This mode is for starting the engine.

Place the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral).

Customer care the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button once.

Release the button after the starting procedure begins. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *176*. The ignition will then remain on.

Ignition On

With the vehicle off and the brake pedal NOT applied, pressing and holding the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Ignition on mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in Start / Run, but the vehicle will not

be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Ignition on mode. Press the button again to turn the ignition off.

Steering Column Lock

The vehicle has an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the vehicle is turned off and the driver's door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases.

When starting the engine, the steering column lock may not release if the wheels are turned off centre. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle may need service.

Starting the Engine

1. Apply the electric parking brake. Release it only after starting the engine and you are ready to drive off.
2. Place the shift lever in P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start if the shift lever is in any other position.

Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

3. With the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in the vehicle, press the brake pedal:
   - Press the ENGINE START/STOP button. When the engine begins cranking, release the button.

     Once the engine starts, the idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it.

If the RKE transmitter is not in the vehicle, if there is interference, or if the RKE battery is low, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display a message. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *8*.

If the engine does not start after 15 seconds of cranking, wait one minute for the starter motor to cool, then try the same steps again.

Caution

Cranking the engine for long periods of time by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the starter motor and drain the battery.

Wait at least 1 minute between each try to let the starter motor cool down.

When the engine is cold, let it run for a few minutes before driving. This lets oil pressure build up. The engine may sound louder when it is cold.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

Some vehicle accessories may be used after the ignition is turned off.

The power windows and sunroof, if equipped, will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened.

The infotainment system will continue to operate for 10 minutes, until the driver's door is opened, or until the ignition is turned on or placed in Accessory mode.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

The automatic engine stop/start system helps to save fuel and reduce exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, the system switches off the engine (performs an Auto Stop) once the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at traffic lights, etc.

⚠ Warning

The automatic engine Stop/Start feature causes the engine to shut off while the ignition is still on. The vehicle may restart and move unexpectedly.

Always shift to P (Park) or to N (Neutral), set the parking brake and then turn the ignition off before exiting the vehicle.

Auto Stop

An Auto Stop may be activated once the vehicle is at a standstill as follows.

- Press the brake pedal.

The engine will restart as follows.

- Release the brake pedal.

Note

The engine will also restart when the shift lever is moved from D (Drive) into P (Park) or N (Neutral).



An Auto Stop is indicated by the tachometer needle moving to the AUTO STOP position. Once the engine restarts, the engine speed indication is resumed.

Auto Stop may be deactivated and not operate, or an engine in Auto Stop may restart if a condition such as the following is detected:

- A minimum vehicle speed has not been reached.
- The engine or transmission is not at the required operating temperature.

- The outside temperature is not in the required operating range, typically between -10 °C and 50 °C.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than D (Drive).
- The battery has been recently disconnected.
- The battery charge is low.
- The interior comfort level has not reached the requested settings for the climate control system or demist.
- The Auto Stop time is greater than two minutes.
- The brake system vacuum is insufficient.

Parking

1. Apply the electric park brake.
2. Select position P (Park).
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.
5. Press the button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors and arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *22*.

Note

The engine fan may keep going for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

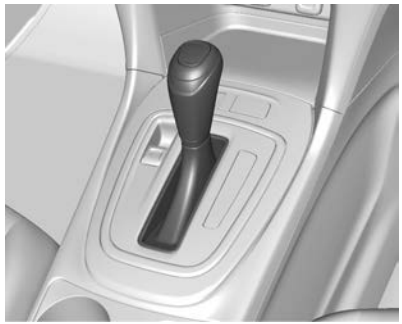
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.
- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Automatic Transmission



Press the select button on the front of the shift lever to move into any position. The lever position is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Note

The engine will not start unless the shift lever is in position **P** or **N**.

P : This position locks the front wheels. Use P (Park) when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily. Always move

the shift lever to P and apply the electric parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

Caution

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission.

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes applied in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. Fully press the brake pedal and then press the shift lever select button before shifting from P when the ignition is on.

If you cannot shift out of P, ease pressure on the shift lever, then push the shift lever all the way into P as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear.

R : Use this gear to reverse.

Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

N : In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ Warning

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the parking brake, press the brake pedal or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

D : This position is for normal driving. The transmission will select the appropriate gear according to the current load and driving conditions, and will provide optimum fuel economy. If more power is needed for passing, press the accelerator pedal down.

L : Allows the driver to select the range of gear positions manually. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *181*.

Operating Modes

The transmission may operate in a lower gear than normal to improve vehicle performance under certain conditions. The engine speed may be higher and there may be an increase in noise during the following conditions:

- When climbing a gradient.
- When driving downhill.
- When driving in hot temperatures or at high altitude.

Caution
Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

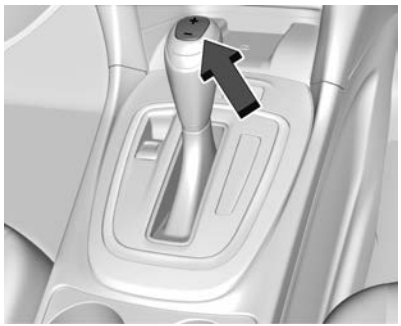
Manual Mode

Electronic Range Select (ERS) Mode

ERS or manual mode allows for the selection of the range of gear positions. Use this mode when driving downhill or towing a trailer to limit the top gear and vehicle speed. The shift position indicator within the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display a number next to the L indicating the highest available gear under manual mode and the driving conditions when manual mode was selected.

To use this feature:

1. Move the shift lever to L (Manual Mode).



2. Press the plus/minus button on the shift lever, to increase or decrease the gear range available.

When shifting to L (Manual Mode), the transmission will shift to a preset lower gear range. For this preset range, the highest gear available is displayed next to the L in the DIC. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *91* for more information. All gears below that number are available to use. For example, when 4 (Fourth) is shown next to the L, 1 (First) through 4 (Fourth) gears are shifted automatically. To shift to 5 (Fifth) gear, press the + (Plus) button or shift into D (Drive).

L (Manual Mode) will prevent shifting to a lower gear range if the engine speed is too high. If vehicle speed is not reduced within the time allowed, the lower gear range shift will not be completed. Slow the vehicle, then press the − (Minus) button to the desired lower gear range.

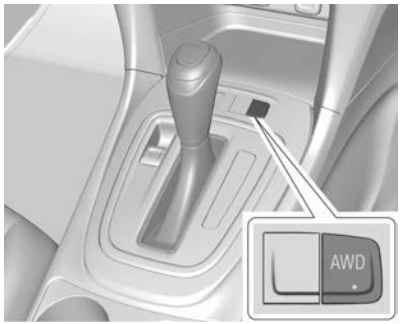
While using the ERS, cruise control can be used.

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature can operate in All-Wheel Drive (AWD) Mode.

The AWD system delivers power to all four wheels and the system adjusts as needed to improve traction.



Press the AWD switch on the centre console to activate the system. The AWD light will flash briefly while the system is engaging and stay lit to indicate AWD is active.

Press the switch again to disable the system. The light will flash briefly while the system disables and then stay off.

The AWD Mode will stay selected until the mode is changed.

When operated in two-wheel drive, the vehicle will deliver power to the front wheels only and may provide better fuel economy.

A system off message displays if there is a temporary condition making the AWD system unavailable. The vehicle will run in two-wheel drive.

This could be caused by:

- A compact spare tyre on the vehicle.
- AWD system overheat.
- Loss of wheel or vehicle speed.
- Certain other vehicle electrical conditions.

The message turns off when the compact spare tyre is replaced by a full-size tyre, the differential fluid cools, or the above conditions are no longer present and the warning message is reset.

To reset the warning message manually, turn the ignition off and then back on again after 30 seconds. If the message stays on, see your dealer.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system preventing the wheels from locking up.
- Allows maximum braking effort while full steering control is retained, even in the event of panic braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

The initial self-check may also be audible. A momentary motor or clicking noise may be heard while this test is being performed. The brake pedal may also move slightly. This is normal.

Keep the brake pedal fully pressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

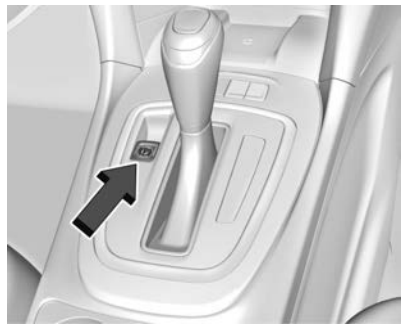
If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is located on the centre console and can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

The system has a Ⓟ Electric Parking Brake light and a Ⓟ Service Parking Brake light or message. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *86* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *86*. There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Centre (DIC) messages. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check for the Ⓟ light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Ensure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Pull the EPB switch momentarily.

The Ⓟ light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the Ⓟ light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied, or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display.

Release the EPB switch and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced.

Do not drive the vehicle if the Ⓟ light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *86*.

If the Ⓟ Service Parking Brake light or message is on or the Ⓟ light flashes when the ignition is turned on, pull the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the Ⓟ light remains on. If the Ⓟ Service Parking Brake light or message remains on, see your dealer.

If the EPB switch is pulled while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is pulled. If the switch is pulled until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

Automatic Transmission

The EPB applies automatically when shifting to P (Park) on a steep incline. The EPB releases as soon as the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) and the vehicle accelerates.

EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Turn the ignition on or to Accessory mode.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the EPB switch momentarily.

The EPB is released when the Ⓟ light is off.

If the Service Parking Brake light or message is on, release the EPB by pressing and holding the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the Ⓟ light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

Caution
Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

The EPB will automatically release when the engine is running, the transmission is placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Brake Assist

The Brake Assist feature is designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions.

This feature uses the ABS hydraulic brake control module to supplement the brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle.

The ABS hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade sufficient enough to activate HSA.

This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a gradient, HSA will be automatically activated.

During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure there is no rolling.

The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

To change the duration, see “Extended Hill Start Assist” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

System Operation

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

ESC activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually travelling. ESC selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

In some cases, if cruise control is being used and TCS or ESC begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control may disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

When enabled, both systems operate automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary

to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when ESC is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the ignition off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. If comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

Turning the Systems Off and On (Mid-level DIC)

Caution
Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

At speeds of 56 km/h or above, the ability to turn off or on is disabled.

TCS and ESC can be turned off or on using the Driver Information Centre (DIC) controls as follows:



Press ◁ or ▷ to select the DIC (Vehicle) page, then use △ or ▽ to scroll through the items to select Traction & Stability.

The current status (on or off) of the TCS (TC) and ESC will be displayed.

Press ✓ to enter the Options menu.

Use △ or ▽ to scroll through the available options then press ✓ to select.

- If TCS is turned off, the displayed status on the DIC will change from On to Off and (TC) will illuminate in the instrument cluster.
- If ESC is turned off, the displayed status on the DIC of ESC, and TCS if it was on, will change from On to Off. (TC) and OFF will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

Turning the Systems Off and On (Up-level DIC)

Caution
Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

At speeds of 56 km/h or above, this ability to turn off or on is disabled.

TCS and ESC can be turned off or on using the Driver Information Centre (DIC) controls as follows:



Press ◁ or ▷ to access the DIC ⚙ (Options) page.

If required, use △ or ▽ to scroll through to Traction & Stability.

Press ✓ to select. The current status (on or off) of the TCS (TC) and ESC OFF will be displayed.

Press ✓ to open a menu to enable the settings to be changed.

Use △ or ▽ to scroll through the available options then press ✓ to select.

- If TCS is turned off, the displayed status on the DIC will change from On to Off and (TC) will illuminate in the instrument cluster.
- If ESC is turned off, the displayed status on the DIC of ESC, and TCS if it was on, will change from On to Off. (TC) and OFF will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

HDC can be used when driving downhill. It sets and maintains vehicle speed while descending a very steep incline in a forward or reverse gear.

The HDC switch is on the centre console.

Press to enable or disable HDC. Vehicle speed must be below 50 km/h.



The HDC light displays on the instrument cluster when enabled.

HDC can maintain vehicle speeds between 3 and 22 km/h on an incline greater than or equal to a 10% gradient. A blinking HDC light indicates the system is actively applying the brakes to maintain vehicle speed.

When HDC is activated, the initial HDC speed is set to the current driving speed. It can be increased or decreased by pressing +RES or –SET on the steering wheel or by applying the accelerator or brake pedal. This adjusted speed becomes the new set speed.

HDC will remain enabled between 22 and 60 km/h; however vehicle speed cannot be set or maintained in this range. It will automatically disable if the vehicle speed is above 80 km/h or above 60 km/h for at least 30 seconds. Press again to re-enable HDC.

Cruise Control

The cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressing the accelerator
- Will only operate at speeds above 40 km/h
- Switches are located on the steering wheel.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

Remember that when illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal or push .

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

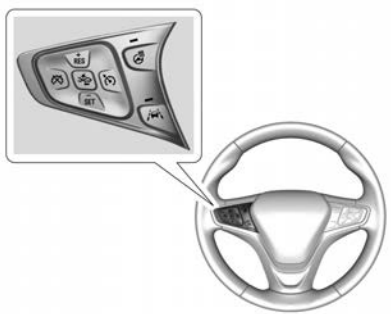
When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

The cruise control is cancelled if the Traction Control System (TCS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *204*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, cruise control can be turned back on.

Cruise control will disengage if either TCS or ESC is turned off.

If the brakes are applied, cruise control disengages.



: Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. A white indicator comes on in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

+RES : If there is a set speed in memory, press briefly to resume that speed or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

−SET : Press briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed.

Setting Cruise Control

To set a speed:

1. Press to turn the cruise system on.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

3. Press and release -SET. The desired set speed briefly appears in the instrument cluster.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control indicator on the instrument cluster turns green after cruise control has been set to the desired speed. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *78*.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and the brakes are applied or is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h or more, briefly press +RES. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold +RES on the steering wheel until the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, then release it.
- To increase the speed in small increments, briefly press +RES. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold -SET until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in small increments, briefly press -SET. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h slower.

Ending Cruise Control

There are four ways to end cruise control:

- Press the brake pedal lightly.
- Press .
- Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
- Turn off cruise control, press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, backing, and parking. Please read this entire section to gain a full understanding of their capabilities and limitations before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered, such as with a sticker, magnet, etc.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Audible or Safety Alert Seat

Some driver assistance features such as Forward Collision Alert, Lane Keeping Assist, Rear Cross Traffic Alert and Parking Assist, alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see Chime Volume under “Comfort and Convenience” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see Alert Type under “Collision/ Detection Systems” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Cleaning

Depending on vehicle options, keep the following areas of the vehicle clean to ensure the best driver assistance feature performance. Driver Information Centre (DIC) messages may display when the systems are unavailable or blocked.





- Front and rear bumpers and the area below the bumpers.
- Front grille and headlamps.
- Front camera lens in the front grille or near the front emblem.
- Front side and rear side panels.
- Outside of the windscreen in front of the rear view mirror.
- Side camera lens on the bottom of the outside mirrors.
- Rear side corner bumpers.
- Rear vision camera above the number plate.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

⚠ Warning

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera (rear number plate surround), it may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

A view of the area behind the vehicle is displayed on the infotainment screen, when reverse gear is selected.

Note

If the vehicle is equipped with a surround vision system, see *Surround Vision System* ⇨ *196*.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the vehicle.
- Forward of the camera.
- Higher than the camera.

Activation

When the ignition is on and reverse gear is engaged the rear vision camera image is automatically displayed on the infotainment screen. Once the vehicle is shifted out of reverse gear, the infotainment screen returns to the previous display.

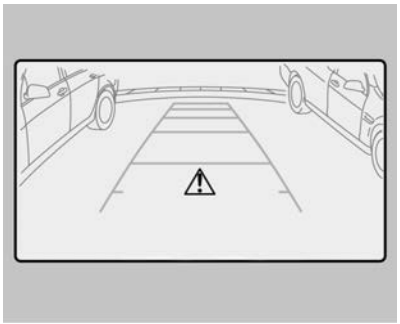
Note

- The distance of the objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed depends on the road condition and vehicle orientation.
- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The RVC display will override all other operating displays.
- The RVC display may be temporarily interrupted when some audio system or climate control settings are changed.
- The PA warning tones will still be heard when the reverse camera is enabled. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *198*.

The reverse camera system may be affected by the following:

- If the sun or headlamp beams are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera lens. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- If dirt, snow or ice has built up, clean the lens. See “Cleaning” further in this section.

Guidelines



When the camera image is displayed, dynamic guidelines are also displayed to assist with reversing the vehicle.

The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

A warning triangle may also be displayed to show the rear parking assist has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object becomes.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The camera display and guidelines are only an aid and are neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

Depending on vehicle model, guidelines and/or symbols can be turned off or on by touching the infotainment screen buttons, or under “Collision/Detection Systems” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Cleaning



- The camera is located next to the liftgate handle.
- The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.
- Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

⚠ Warning

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

If equipped, Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) can detect objects up to 20 m approaching from the left or right at the rear of the vehicle.

When an object is detected, a warning triangle is displayed on the infotainment screen, two beeps sound from the left or right, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle, and the driver's seat will pulse.

Surround Vision System

If equipped, the surround vision system displays an image of the area surrounding the vehicle, along with the front or rear camera views on the infotainment display.

The system uses four cameras:

- Front camera located in the grille or near the front emblem
- Side cameras located on the underside of each outside mirror
- Rear camera located above the number plate

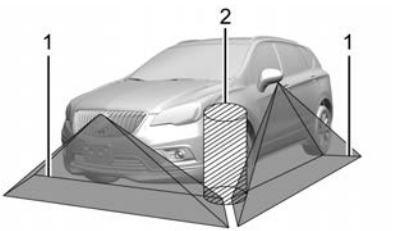
The surround vision system can be accessed by selecting 'Camera' in the infotainment display or when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). To return to the previous screen sooner, press any button on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or reach a vehicle speed of approximately 12 km/h.

⚠ Warning

The Surround Vision cameras have blind spots and will not display all objects near the corners of the vehicle. Folding outside mirrors that are out of position may not display surround view correctly. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.



1. Views Displayed by the Surround Vision Cameras
2. Area Not Shown

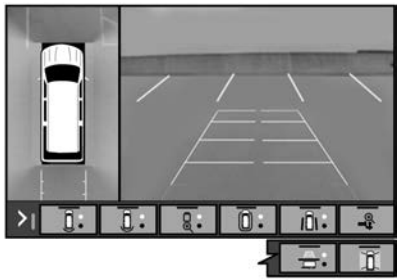


1. Views Displayed by the Surround Vision Cameras
2. Area Not Shown

⚠ Warning

The camera(s) do not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other object outside of the cameras' field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Shown distances may be different from actual distances. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only these camera(s). Always check behind and around the vehicle before driving. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Camera Views



Touch the camera view buttons along the bottom of the infotainment display.

Front/Rear Standard View : Displays an image of the area in front or behind the vehicle. Touch Front/Rear Standard View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touching the button multiple times will toggle between front and rear camera views.

If equipped, the front view camera also displays when the park assist system detects an object within 30 cm.

Front/Rear Junction View : Displays a front or rear cross traffic view that shows objects directly to the left and right of the front or back of the vehicle. Touch Junction View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touching the button multiple times will toggle between front and rear camera views.

Front/Rear Overhead View : Displays a front or rear overhead view of the vehicle. Touching the button will toggle between the two views.

Front/Rear Bowl View : Displays a view of the vehicle from either the front or the back of the vehicle. Touch Bowl View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touching the button multiple times will toggle between forward and rearward views. Park assist and rear cross traffic alert are not available when Bowl View is active.

Side Forward/Rearward View : Displays a view that shows objects next to the front or rear sides of the vehicle. Touch Side Forward/ Rearward View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touching the button multiple times will toggle between forward and rearward views. Park assist and rear cross traffic alert are not available when Side Forward/ Rearward view is active.

Hitch View : Assists while connecting to a trailer. Displays a zoomed-in view of the towbar hitch to help align the tow ball with the trailer coupling.

Guidance Lines : Displays available guidelines. A greyed-out button indicates that guidelines are not available. When enabled, the guidelines will display when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

Top Down View : Displays an image of the area surrounding the vehicle, along with the rear camera view in the infotainment display. The rear camera view will be replaced by the front camera view after shifting from R (Reverse) to a forward gear or when the vehicle is moving forward slower than 8 km/h. This view can also be accessed by touching the Top Down View button when the Camera view is active.

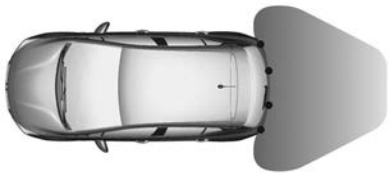
Parking Assist

Rear Parking Assist

If the vehicle is equipped with front-rear parking assist see “Front-Rear Parking Assist” further in this Section.

The rear parking assist (PA) aids manoeuvring and parking the vehicle by measuring the distance between the vehicle and rear objects. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals, a display indication and/or, if equipped and enabled, may pulse the driver's seat.

The type of alert can be changed, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.



The system uses ultrasonic parking sensors located in the rear bumper.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The PA is only an aid and is neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under every condition, e.g. objects too close to the vehicle, objects

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like ultrasonic waves or heavy rain can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 8 km/h.

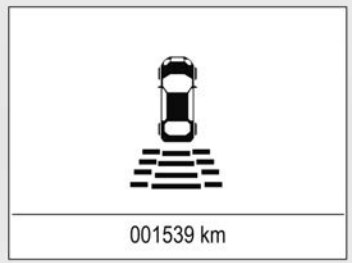
Activation

After the ignition is switched on, when reverse gear is selected the rear parking assist is automatically activated.

Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals or, if equipped and enabled, may pulse the driver's seat when potentially hazardous objects are detected behind the vehicle at a distance of up to 1.5 metres while reverse gear is engaged. The acoustic warning signals may sound in the vehicle on the side closer to the object.

The interval between acoustic signals decreases as the vehicle moves closer to the object. When the distance is less than approximately 30 cm, the signal becomes continuous. If equipped, the driver's seat will pulse five times.



Additionally, the distance to rear objects is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until activation in personalisation menu again. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not operate temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is indicated in the DIC.

Front-Rear Parking Assist

For vehicles equipped with front-rear parking assist (PA), the system measures the distance between the vehicle and objects in front of and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals, a display indication and/or, if equipped and enabled, may pulse the driver's seat.

The type of alert can be changed, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Unique acoustic warning signals sound for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.



The system uses ultrasonic parking sensors located in the rear and front bumpers.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The PA is only an aid and is neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under every condition, e.g. objects too

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

close to the vehicle, objects above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like ultrasonic waves or heavy rain can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 8 km/h.

Activation

After the ignition is switched on, when reverse gear is engaged, the front and rear parking assist is ready to operate. The front parking assist is activated automatically at a speed up to 8 km/h.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates that the system is ready to operate.

If P is switched off within an ignition cycle, the front parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 8 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and Park Assist Off pops-up in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals or, if equipped and enabled, may pulse the driver's seat when potentially hazardous objects are detected:

- In front of the vehicle at a distance range of up to 1.2 m and behind the vehicle at a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged
- Behind the vehicle at a distance range up to 1.5 metres while reverse gear is engaged.

The acoustic warning signals may sound in the vehicle on the side closer to the object. Acoustic signals are of a higher pitch for the front than for the rear.

The interval between acoustic signals decreases as the vehicle moves closer to the object. When the distance is less than approximately 30 cm, the signal becomes continuous. If equipped, the driver's seat will pulse five times.



Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the DIC.

The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

The rear parking assist automatically switches off when reverse gear is disengaged. The front parking assist is deactivated automatically at a speed above 8 km/h.

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P on the centre console. When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and Park Assist Off pops-up in the DIC.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message pops-up in the DIC.

Advanced Parking Assist

If equipped, Advanced Parking Assist (APA) searches for and steers the vehicle into parallel and perpendicular parking spots. When using APA, you must still shift gears, and control the brakes and accelerator. A display and audible beeps help to guide parking manoeuvres.

⚠ Warning

APA does not apply the brakes. APA may not detect objects in the parking space, objects that are soft or narrow, objects high off the ground such as flatbed trucks, or objects below ground level such as large potholes. Always

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

verify that the parking space is appropriate for parking a vehicle. APA does not respond to changes in the parking space, such as movement of an adjacent vehicle, or a person or object entering the parking space. APA does not detect or avoid traffic that is behind or alongside of the vehicle. Always be prepared to stop the vehicle during the parking manoeuvre.

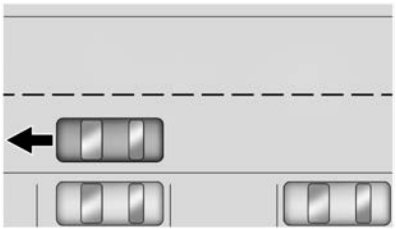
Press P on the centre console and continue driving slowly to enable the system to search for a parking space that is large enough and within 1.5 m of the vehicle. The vehicle speed must be below 30 km/h. The system cannot:

- Detect whether it is a legal parking space.
- Park exactly lined up with the vehicle next to it if the spot is approached at an angle or if the parking space is angled.
- Park exactly centred in a spot that is marked too large.
- Always detect low curbs.

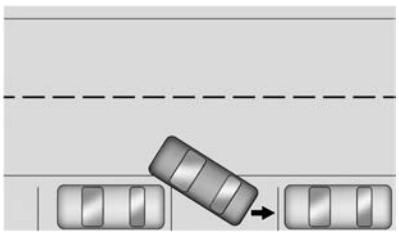
When enabled, APA searches for parallel parking spaces to the left of the vehicle.

To search for a parking space to the right, operate the right turn signal or, if available, change the side selection in the infotainment display.

To switch the parking mode between parallel and perpendicular, press and hold P during the search process or, if available, change the parking mode in the infotainment display.



After completely passing a large enough space, an audible beep occurs and a red stop symbol is displayed.



Follow the displayed instructions. When instructed to drive in reverse, shift to R (Reverse) to engage automatic steering. The steering wheel will briefly vibrate as a reminder to remove hands from the steering wheel.

Check surroundings and continue braking or accelerating as needed, and be prepared to stop to avoid vehicles, pedestrians, or objects.

If the vehicle is in R (Reverse), but does not steer into the expected space, this may be because the system is manoeuvring the vehicle into a previously detected space. The APA system does not need service.

If the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, APA is automatically disengaged and automatic steering will turn off.

A progress arrow displays the status of the parking manoeuvre. Depending on the space size, additional manoeuvres may be required, and there will be additional instructions.

When changing gears, allow the automatic steering to complete before continuing the parking manoeuvre.

Upon successful completion of a manoeuvre, APA will beep and display a **Parking Complete** message. Complete parking the vehicle, see *Parking* ⇨ *178*.

APA may automatically disengage if:

- The steering wheel is used by the driver.
- The maximum allowed speed is exceeded.
- There is a failure with the APA system.
- Electronic stability control or antilock brakes are activated.
- A high priority vehicle message is displayed in the DIC.

To cancel APA, press P again.

If the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The APA system may require a short period of driving along curves to calibrate.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert on the windscreen and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat. FCA also lights an amber visual alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 8 km/h.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system only and does not apply the brakes.

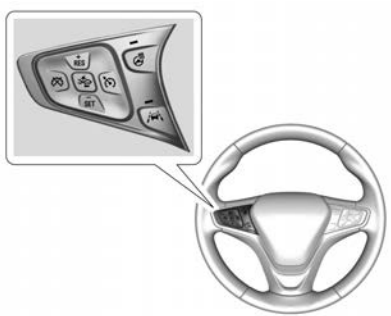
When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

The FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.



FCA can be disabled using the steering wheel control, or through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected in the driving path, the vehicle ahead indicator in the DIC will display green.

Vehicles may not be detected on curves, freeway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

⚠ Warning

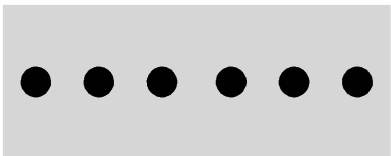
FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Driver Alert



The vehicle ahead indicator will change to amber when the distance to the preceding vehicle becomes to small, or when approaching the vehicle too rapidly.

Collision Alert



When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windscreen. Also, eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Selecting the Alert Timing

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, or Near, or on some vehicles, Off.

The first button press shows the current setting in the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed.

The timing of the alert will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur.

Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timings may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Following Distance Indicator

The following distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following time in seconds on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *91*. The minimum following time is

0.5 seconds away. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, or the vehicle ahead is out of sensor range, dashes will be displayed.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, this may correct the issue:

- Clean the outside of the windscreen in front of the rear view mirror.
- Clean the entire front of the vehicle.
- Clean the headlamps.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)

If the vehicle has Forward Collision Alert (FCA), it also has Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB), which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA).

When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is travelling in the same direction that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This forward automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected. This is shown by the FCA vehicle ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *204*.

The system works when driving in a forward gear between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. It can detect vehicles up to approximately 60 m.

⚠ Warning

AEB is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on AEB to brake the vehicle. AEB will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

AEB may not:

- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.
- Detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- Detect a vehicle ahead if it is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

AEB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, AEB may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

AEB may automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could respond to a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. To override AEB, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Intelligent Brake Assist

Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA) may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

AEB and IBA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See Forward Collision System in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

⚠ Warning

Using AEB or IBA while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

A system unavailable message may display if:

- The front of the vehicle or windscreen is not clean.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with object detection.
- There is a problem with the electronic stability control system.

The AEB system does not need service.

Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System

If equipped, the Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) system may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with nearby pedestrians when driving in a forward gear.

FPB displays an amber indicator, , when a nearby pedestrian is detected ahead. When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, FPB provides a red flashing alert on the windscreen and rapidly beeps. FPB can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This system includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA), and the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system may also respond to pedestrians. See *Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *206*.

The FPB system can detect and provide an alert to pedestrians while the vehicles is in a forward gear at speeds between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. During daytime driving, the system detects pedestrians up to a distance of approximately 40 m. During night time driving, system performance is very limited.

⚠ Warning

FPB does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle unless it detects a pedestrian. FPB may not detect pedestrians, including children:

- When the pedestrian is not directly ahead, fully visible, or standing upright, or when part of a group.
- Due to poor visibility, including night time conditions, fog, rain, or snow.
- If the FPB sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.
- If the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. Keep the windscreen, headlamps and FPB sensor clean and in good repair.

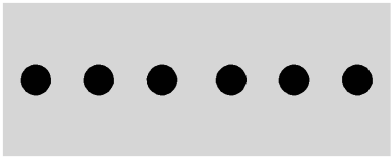
FPB can be set to Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision/ Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

Detecting the Pedestrian Ahead



FPB alerts and automatic braking will not occur unless the FPB system detects a pedestrian. When a nearby pedestrian is detected in front of the vehicle, the pedestrian ahead indicator will display amber.

Front Pedestrian Alert



When the vehicle approaches a pedestrian ahead too rapidly, the red FPB alert display will flash on the windscreen. Eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front. When this pedestrian alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the front pedestrian alert occurs.

Automatic Braking

If FPB detects it is about to crash into a pedestrian ahead, and the brakes have not been applied, FPB may automatically brake moderately or brake hard. This can help to avoid some very low speed pedestrian crashes or reduce pedestrian injury.

FPB can automatically brake to detected pedestrians between 8 km/h and 80 km/h. Automatic braking levels may be reduced under certain conditions, such as higher speeds.

If this happens, automatic braking may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB. Pressing the accelerator pedal will also release automatic braking and the EPB.

⚠ Warning

FPB may alert or automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could falsely alert or brake for objects similar in shape or size to pedestrians, including shadows. This is normal operation and the vehicle does

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

not need service. To override Automatic Braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Automatic braking can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Front Pedestrian Detection” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*.

⚠ Warning

Using the Front Pedestrian Braking system while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

Cleaning the System

If FPB does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windscreen in front of the rear view mirror may correct the issue.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind spot areas.

When the vehicle is in a forward gear, a symbol will display in the left or right side mirror when a moving vehicle is detected in the blind spot on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system, read the entire LCA section before using this feature.

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

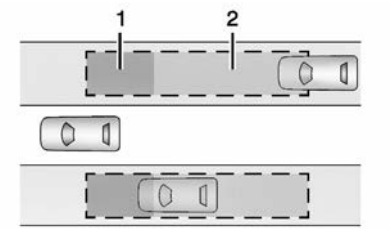
If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers avoid lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind spot areas, or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind.

The LCA warning will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

⚠ Warning

The LCA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

LCA Detection Zones



1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. LCA Detection Zone

The detection zones cover an area approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m. The height of the zone is approximately 0.5 m and 2 m from the ground.

The detection zones start at approximately the middle of the vehicle, and for SZBA goes back 5 m. The LCA detection zone warns the driver of vehicles rapidly approaching from up to 25 m behind the vehicle.

How the System Works

An illuminated LCA symbol indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the LCA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.



Left Side Mirror Symbol



Right Side Mirror Symbol

When the engine is started, both outside mirror LCA symbols will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating.

When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror symbol will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in the next lane over in that blind spot or rapidly approaching that zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

LCA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *99*. If LCA is disabled by the driver, the LCA mirror displays will not light up.

If the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The LCA system requires some driving for the system to calibrate to maximum performance. This calibration may occur more quickly if the vehicle is driving on a straight highway road with traffic and roadside objects (e.g., guardrails, barriers).

LCA symbols may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The LCA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. The LCA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. Attached objects may also interfere with the detection of vehicles. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

The LCA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the next lane over, especially in wet conditions or when driving on sharp curves. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

The LCA may not operate when the LCA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *273*.

If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the LCA displays do not light up when moving vehicles are in the side blind spot or are rapidly approaching this zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. This system uses a camera to detect lane markings between 60 km/h and 180 km/h. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert if the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking. LKA can be overridden by turning the steering wheel. This system is not intended to keep the vehicle centred in the lane. LKA will not assist and alert if the turn signal is active in the direction of lane departure, or if it detects that you are accelerating, braking or actively steering.

⚠ Warning

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. It may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The LKA and LDW systems might not:

- Provide an alert or enough steering assist to avoid a lane departure or crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

conditions. This can occur if the windscreen or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.

- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If the LKA only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist or provide an LDW alert when approaching the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Even with LKA and LDW, you must steer the vehicle. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

occur. Always keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LKA in bad weather conditions or on roads with unclear lane markings, such as construction zones.

⚠ Warning

Using LKA while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Turn the system off.

How the System Works

LKA uses a camera sensor installed on the windscreen ahead of the rear view mirror to detect lane markings. It may provide brief steering assist if it detects an unintended lane departure. It may further provide an audible alert or the driver seat may pulse indicating that a lane marking has been crossed.

To turn LKA on and off, press on the steering wheel. If equipped, the indicator light on the button comes on when LKA is on and turns off when LKA is disabled.

When on, is white, if equipped, indicating that the system is not ready to assist. is green if LKA is ready to assist. LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. is amber when assisting. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert by flashing amber if the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking. Additionally, there may be three beeps, or the driver seat may pulse three times, on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

Take Steering

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. If LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert and chime may be provided. Steer the vehicle to dismiss. LKA may become temporarily unavailable after repeated steering alerts.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The system performance may be affected by:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.
- Roads with poor lane markings, such as two-lane roads.

A system unavailable message may display if the camera is blocked. The LKA system does not need service.

A camera blocked message may display if the camera is blocked. Some driver assistance systems may have reduced performance or not work at all. An LKA or LDW unavailable message may display if the systems are temporarily unavailable. This message could be due to a blocked camera. The LKA system does not need service. Clean the outside of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

LKA assistance and/or LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn the LKA off if these conditions continue.

Fuel

⚠ Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your vehicle warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *215*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

Recommended Fuel

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

1.5L Engine

Use of clean unleaded petrol of regular 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol (95 RON or higher) may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

2.0L Engine

Use of clean premium unleaded petrol of 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

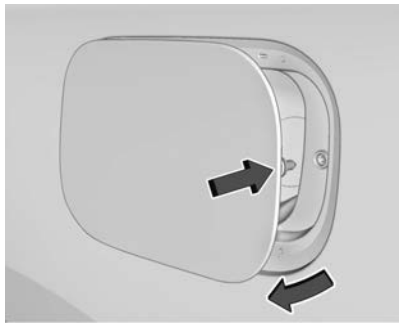
The use of premium unleaded petrol of 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a reduction in performance may be noticed.

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Filling the Tank



The fuel cap is behind the fuel door on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press on the RKE transmitter to unlock. To

open the fuel door, push and release the rearward centre edge of the door.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.

Turn the fuel cap anticlockwise to remove. While refuelling, hang the fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door. Reinstall the cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks.

⚠ Warning

Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

- Vehicle performance issues, including engine stalling and damage to the fuel system.
- Fuel spills.
- Potential fuel fires.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *273*.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg)

Engine	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol
Braked Trailer	1500	2000
Unbraked Trailer	750	750

Note

Exceeding these values could affect your vehicle warranty. **Mandatory Equipment:** Holden 2000 kg rated towbar and Holden trailer wiring equipment.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate is open.

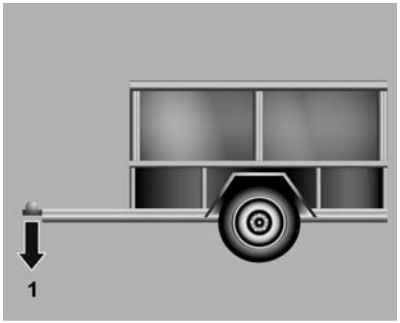
When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the liftgate open.
- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control to face or bi-level mode and outside air off.

For further information about carbon monoxide, see *Fuel* ⇨ *214*.

Trailer Recommendations

Tow Ball Load



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

- For single axle trailers, the tow ball load should be 10% of the loaded trailer mass.

  E.g. if the weight of the trailer and its contents is 750 kg, the tow ball load should be 75 kg.

- For heavy trailers with more than one axle, the tow ball load should be 5 – 10% of the loaded trailer mass.

Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *288*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle, or the vehicle's maximum towing capacity, which ever is lower.

Towing Precautions

- When towing, check and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *252*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 N•m (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- The headlamp beam may need adjusting after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used. See *Headlamp Leveling Control* ⇨ *107*.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.
- Ensure the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an Aggregate Trailer Mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in When Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Accessories and Vehicle Modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Holden. Furthermore, such changes may impact fuel consumption, CO_2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the type approval, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Air Intakes

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Roo Bars

⚠ Warning

Fitting a roo bar may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they may increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 222
Accessories and Modifications 222
Emission Information 222
Emission Control System 222

Vehicle Checks
Bonnet 224
Engine Compartment Overview 226
Engine Oil 229
Engine Oil Life System 231
Automatic Transmission Fluid 232
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 232
Engine Coolant 233
Engine Overheating 235
Washer Fluid 236
Brakes 237
Brake Fluid 237
Battery 238
All-Wheel Drive 239
Wiper Blade Replacement 239
Windscreen Replacement 240

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 241
Halogen Bulbs 241
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 241
LED Lighting 242
Headlamps 242
Front Turn Signal and Fog Lamps 242
Taillamps 243
Licence Plate Lamp 243

Electrical System
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 244
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 245
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 247
Rear Fuse Panel 249

Vehicle Tools
Tools 251

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 252
Tyre Pressure 252
Tread Depth 253
Tyre Rotation 254
Buying New Tyres 254
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 255
Tyre Chains 255
If a Tyre Goes Flat 256
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 257
Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 263
Tyre Changing 264
Compact Spare Tyre 268

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 269

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 271

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 273
Interior Care 279
Floor Mats 282

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-genuine accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance, safety and durability.

These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Genuine Holden accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer for assistance with the Genuine Holden accessories that are available for your vehicle.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems that the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust petrol. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Owner Responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance Requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance Schedule in your Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing Fuel Consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

Wheel Alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm-ups and Idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, Driving and Braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Riding the Brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

Air Conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

Vehicle Checks

Bonnet

⚠ Warning

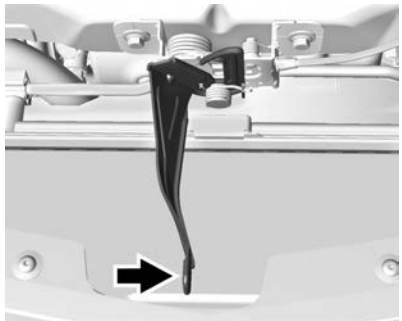
For vehicles with auto engine stop/start, turn the vehicle off before opening the bonnet. If the vehicle is on, the engine will start when the bonnet is opened. You or others could be injured.

⚠ Warning

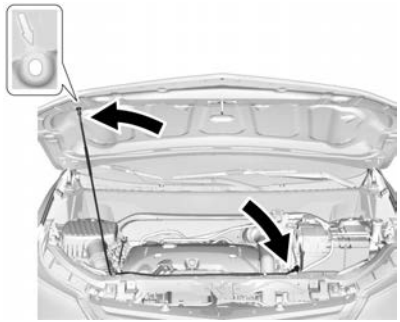
Components under the bonnet can get hot from running the engine. To help avoid the risk of burning unprotected skin, never touch these components until they have cooled, and always use a glove or towel to avoid direct skin contact.

To Open the Bonnet:

1. Pull the bonnet release lever with the symbol. It is on the lower right side of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary release lever under the front centre of the bonnet. Push the secondary bonnet release lever to your right to release.



3. Lift the bonnet and release the bonnet prop rod from its retainer in the front of the engine compartment. Securely insert the rod end into the slot marked with an arrow, on the underside of the bonnet.

To Close the Bonnet:

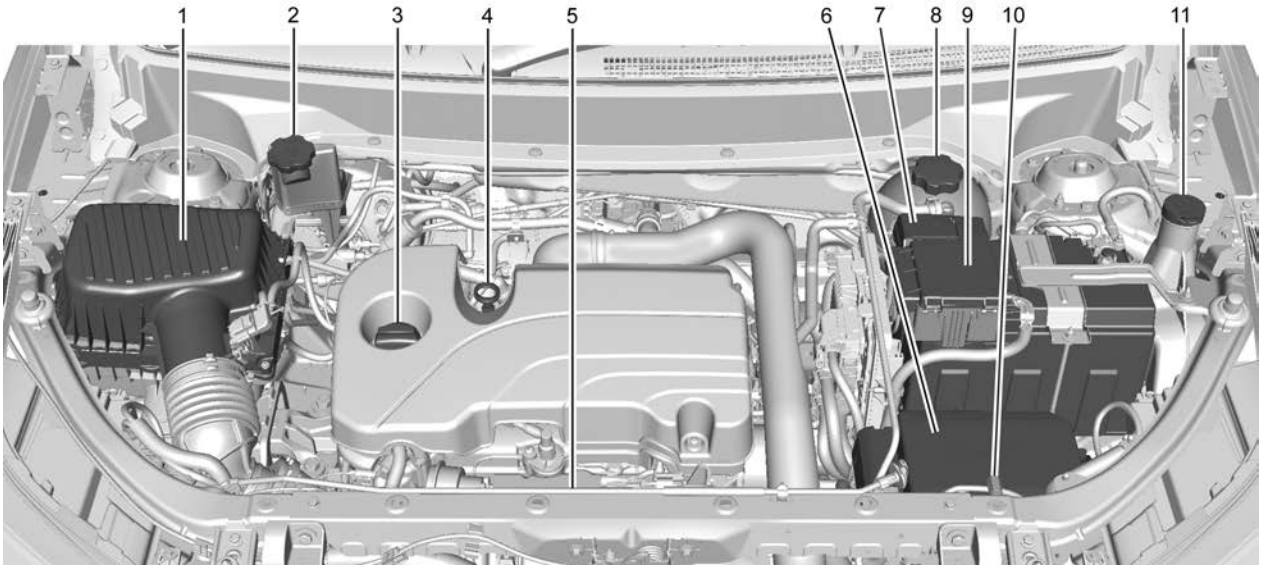
1. Before closing the bonnet, ensure all filler caps are on properly, and all tools are removed.

2. Lift the bonnet and remove the bonnet prop rod from the underside of the bonnet. Return the prop rod to its retainer. The prop rod must click into place when returning it to the retainer to prevent bonnet damage.
3. Lower the bonnet 20 cm above the vehicle and release it. Check to make sure the bonnet is latched completely. Repeat this process with additional force if necessary.

⚠ Warning

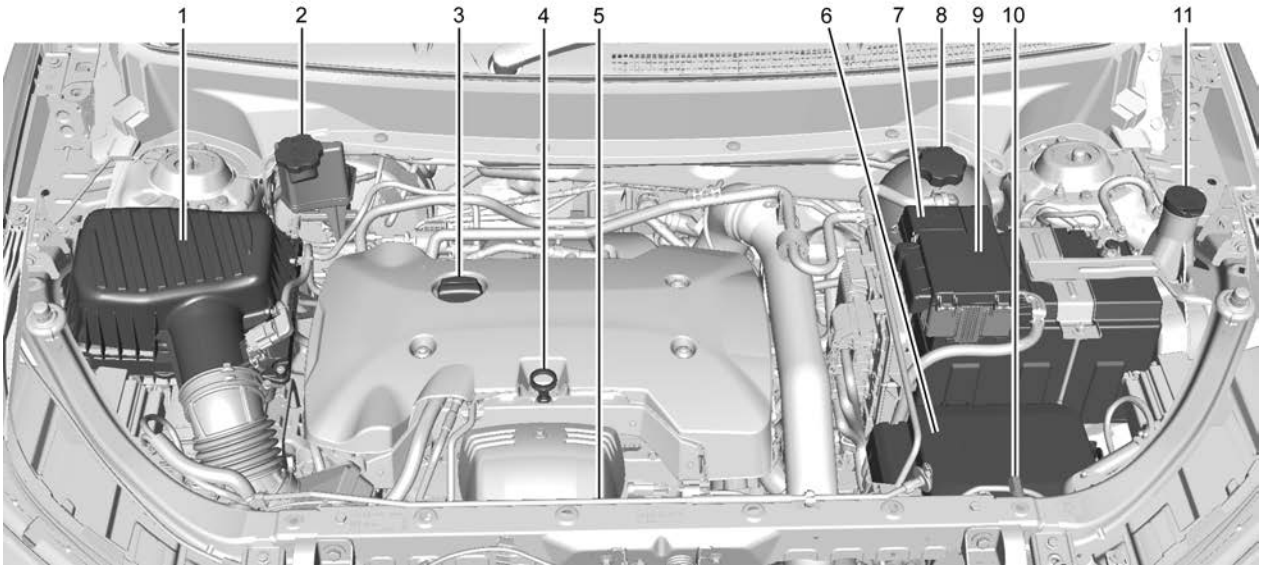
Do not drive the vehicle if the bonnet is not latched completely. The bonnet could open fully, block your vision, and cause a crash. You or others could be injured. Always close the bonnet completely before driving.

Engine Compartment Overview



1.5L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *232*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *237*.
3. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *229*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *229*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *245*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Terminal (Under Cover). See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *269*.
8. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *233*.
9. *Battery* ⇨ *238*.
10. Remote Negative (−) Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *269*.
11. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *236*.



2.0L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *232*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *237*.
3. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *229*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *229*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *245*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Terminal (Under Cover). See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *269*.
8. Engine Coolant Surge Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *233*.
9. *Battery* ⇨ *238*.
10. Remote Negative (−) Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *269*.
11. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *236*.

Engine Oil

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

To ensure optimum engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the correct specification and viscosity grade.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the correct oil level.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly.

Checking Engine Oil Level

Check the engine oil level regularly, or approximately every 650 km, especially prior to a long trip.

Note

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least five minutes.

If a Low Oil Driver Information Centre (DIC) message displays, check the oil level. If the oil is not low and the low oil message remains on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Remove the engine oil dipstick and wipe it clean.

   See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226* for the location.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

3. Reinsert the dipstick fully.
4. Remove the dipstick and read the oil level as described below.

Dilution

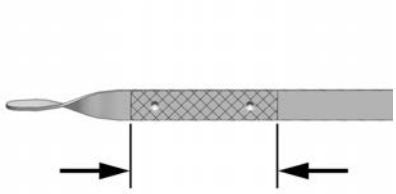
When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

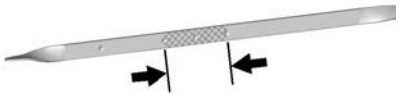
For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution.

If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

Adding Engine Oil



1.5L Petrol Engine



2.0L Petrol Engine

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick and the engine has been off for at least 15 minutes, add 1 litre of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *283* and *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *290*.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the correct operating range.

When finished, ensure the dipstick is inserted all the way back in and ensure the oil fill cap is replaced securely.

Note

Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the vehicle warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

Engine Oil Change Intervals

Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Engine Oil Life System

Changing Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and distance driven.

Based on driving conditions, the distance at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.

For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A 'Change Engine Oil Soon' message is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km.

It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may indicate that an oil change is not necessary for a longer period than shown in the service schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the service schedules outlined in the Service & Warranty booklet. At this time the engine oil life system must be reset.

Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so the system can calculate the next engine oil change.

1. Display 'Oil Life' on the DIC menu. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *91*.
2. Mid-level DIC: Press and hold ✓ for several seconds while the Oil Life display is active.

   Up-level DIC: Press ✓ to select Reset. To confirm, press ◁ or ▷ to select Yes or No and press ✓.
3. 'Oil Life 100%' will be displayed when the oil life system is successfully reset.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Place the ignition on. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *174*.
2. Display 'Oil Life' on the DIC menu. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *91*.
3. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.
4. If the display changes to 100%, the system is reset.

If the 'Change Engine Oil Soon' message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

The vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick. There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer.

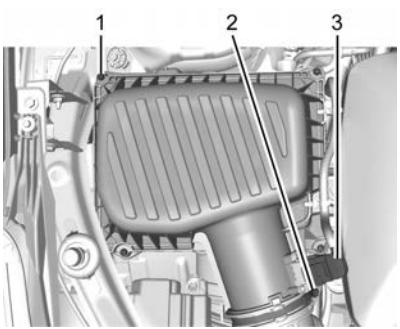
Change the fluid at the intervals listed in the Service & Warranty booklet. Only use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *283*.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the driver side. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226*.

Caution
If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when driving.

Removal



Note

2.0L petrol engine shown; other engines are similar.

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *224*.
2. Remove the four screws (1).
3. Loosen the screw on the air duct clamp (2) and remove the air duct hose from the cover.
4. Remove the air cleaner/filter cover, keeping the wiring harness electrical connector (3) connected to the sensor.
5. Pull straight up on the cover, and while holding the cover, remove the air cleaner/filter.
6. Inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter.

Installation



1. Align the air cleaner/filter with the indicated point on the base of the air cleaner/filter housing and install the air cleaner/filter. The outer air cleaner/filter seal must be fitted properly in the air cleaner/filter housing.
2. Align the air cleaner/filter housing cover tabs to the air cleaner/filter housing.
3. Install the air cleaner/filter housing cover using the four screws.
4. Slide the air duct onto the cover assembly and tighten the screw on the air duct clamp.
5. Verify the wiring harness connector is fully connected to the sensor on the air cleaner/filter housing.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct operating temperature.

⚠ Warning

An under bonnet electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They may be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DexCool® engine coolant mixture. This coolant needs to be checked and changed at appropriate levels. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *283* and refer to the Service & Warranty booklet.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *235*.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.



Check the coolant level in the coolant surge tank when the engine is cold.

When cold, the coolant level should be within the cross-hatched area on the front of the coolant surge tank, or just below the rib. If not, see “Adding Coolant” further in this section.

Adding Coolant

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Caution

Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.



The coolant surge tank pressure cap can be removed when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

1. Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.
3. Fill the coolant surge tank with a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DexCool to the area pointed to on the front of the coolant surge tank.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more coolant mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the mark pointed to on the front of the coolant surge tank.
5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.

Caution
If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an engine coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster and overheat messages in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to warn of engine overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *82*. The DIC also displays overheat messages.

The decision may be made not to lift the bonnet when the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone or an engine overheat DIC message displays, but instead to get service help right away.

If the decision to lift the bonnet is made, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution
Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone and an overheat DIC message is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go back to the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message does not display, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message still displays, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away. If overheat messages appear repeatedly, see your dealer.

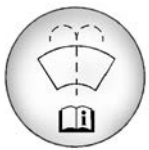
If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message displays, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid

The washer fluid reservoir supplies fluid to the front windscreen and rear window washers.

Check the level regularly.

Adding Washer Fluid



1. Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226* for reservoir location.
2. Add clean water mixed with the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden dealer

   Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper blades.
3. Secure the cap.

Brakes

The disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go, or can be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

Have the brakes serviced as soon as possible.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226* for the location of the reservoir.

Checking Brake Fluid

With the vehicle in P (Park) on a level surface, the brake fluid level should be between the minimum and maximum marks on the brake fluid reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir may go down:

- Normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed. With a leak, the brakes will not work well.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burnt, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *85*.

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Replace brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent increased stopping distance. See your dealer.

What to Add

Use only GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid from a clean, sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *283*.

⚠ Warning

The wrong or contaminated brake fluid could result in damage to the brake system. This could result in the loss of braking leading to a possible injury. Always use the proper GM approved brake fluid.

Caution

If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Immediately wash off any painted surface.

Battery

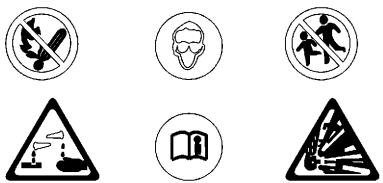
The original equipment battery is maintenance-free. Do not remove the cap and do not add fluid.

This vehicle has an Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) 12-volt battery. Installation of a standard 12-volt battery will result in reduced 12-volt battery life. Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed.

When using a 12-volt battery charger on the 12-volt AGM battery, some chargers have an AGM battery setting on the charger. If available, use the AGM setting on the charger, to limit charge voltage to 14.8 volts.

Stop/Start System

The vehicle has a Stop/Start system to shut off the engine to help conserve fuel. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *177*.



⚠ Warning

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a flashlight.

Do not smoke near a vehicle's battery.

When working around a vehicle's battery, shield your eyes with protective glasses.

Keep children away from vehicle batteries.

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you are not careful.

Follow instructions carefully when working around a battery.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

All-Wheel Drive

Transfer Case

Under normal driving conditions, transfer case fluid does not require maintenance unless there is a fluid leak or unusual noise. If required, have the transfer case serviced by your dealer.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Windscreen wiper blades should be replaced periodically.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways.

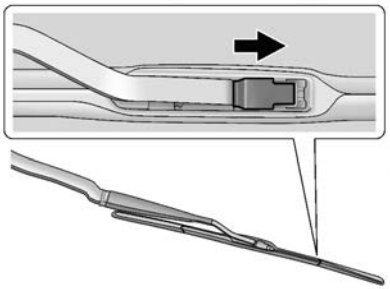
Caution

Allowing the wiper arm to touch the windscreen when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windscreen. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper arm to touch the windscreen.

Front Wiper Blade Replacement

To replace the wiper blade:

1. Pull the wiper assembly away from the windscreen.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the latch open, pull the wiper blade down toward the windscreen far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

Rear Wiper Blade Replacement

The rear wiper blade and wiper arm have a cover for protection.

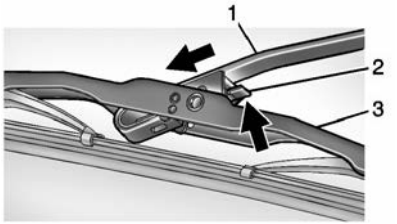
To remove the cover:



1. Slide a plastic tool under the cover and push upward to unsnap.
2. Slide the cover toward the wiper blade tip to unhook it from the blade assembly.
3. Remove the cover.
4. After wiper blade replacement, ensure that the cover hook slides into the slot in the blade assembly.
5. Snap the cover down to secure.

To replace the wiper blade:

1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windscreen.



2. Push the release lever (2) to disengage the hook and push the wiper arm (1) out of the blade assembly (3).
3. Push the new blade assembly securely on the wiper arm until the release lever clicks into place.

Windscreen Replacement

Driver Assistance Systems

If the windscreen needs to be replaced and the vehicle is equipped with a front camera sensor for the Driver Assistance Systems, a

GM replacement windscreen is recommended. The replacement windscreen must be installed according to GM specifications for proper alignment. If it is not, these systems may not work properly, they may display messages, or they may not work at all. See your dealer for proper windscreen replacement.

Acoustic Windscreen

The vehicle is equipped with an acoustic windscreen. If the windscreen needs to be replaced, be sure to get an acoustic windscreen so you will continue to have the benefits an acoustic windscreen can provide.

Bulb Replacement

For the correct type of replacement bulb, or to change a bulb not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Caution

Care needs to be taken when performing the following procedures as damage can occur. If you are not competent, it is recommended that you seek the assistance of your Holden dealer.

Caution

Do not replace incandescent bulbs with aftermarket LED replacement bulbs. This can cause damage to the vehicle electrical system.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurised gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ Warning

The High Intensity Discharge (HID) lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

For replacement of an HID headlight bulb contact your dealer.

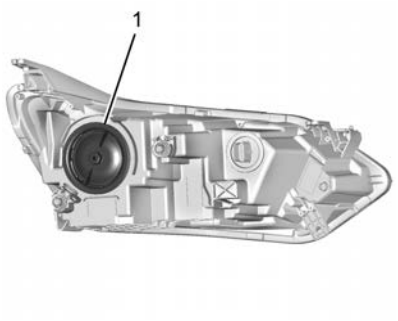
Note
After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Headlamps

Halogen headlamp shown.

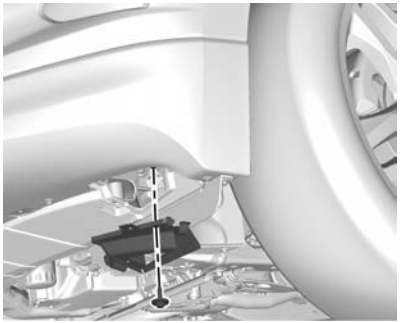


1. Headlamp

To replace a headlamp bulb:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *224*.
2. If desired, to provide greater access:
   - For the driver side, remove the battery cover.
   - For the passenger side, remove the air cleaner cover.
3. Remove the cover from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb from the lamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
6. Install a new bulb in the lamp assembly.
7. Connect the electrical connector.
8. Replace the cover from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.
9. If removed, reinstall the battery cover or the air cleaner cover.

Front Turn Signal and Fog Lamps



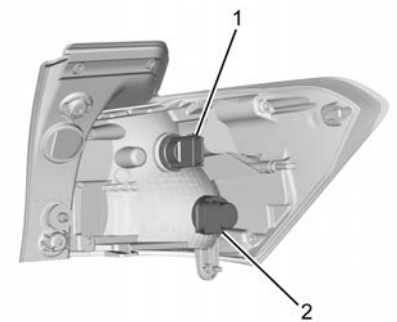
Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

To replace one of these lamps:

1. Remove the fastener to remove the access panel.

2. Access the lamp through the hole in the under-body air deflector.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb assembly.
4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
5. Replace the bulb and reverse Steps 1–4 to reinstall.

Taillamps

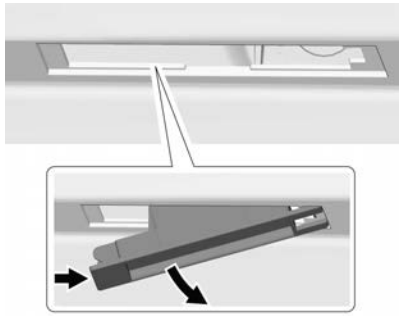


1. Turn Signal
2. Stop lamp/Tail lamp

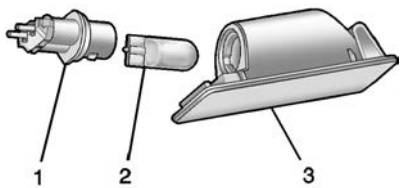
To replace one of these lamps:

1. Open the liftgate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *17*.
2. Remove the two screw covers from the tail lamp assembly.
3. Remove the two screws securing the tail lamp assembly.
4. Pull the tail lamp assembly out of the vehicle body.
5. Disconnect the lamp wiring harness.
6. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and pull it out.
7. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
8. Install the new bulb.
9. Push the bulb socket in and turn it clockwise.
10. Reverse Steps 2–5 to reinstall the lamp assembly.

Licence Plate Lamp



Lamp Assembly



Bulb Assembly

1. Bulb Socket
2. Bulb
3. Lamp Assembly

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the liftgate partway. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *17*.
2. Push the lamp assembly outboard to remove.
3. Pull the lamp assembly down to remove it from the liftgate.
4. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
5. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket (1).
6. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
7. Push the lamp assembly into the liftgate engaging the clip side first.
8. Push on the lamp side opposite the clip until the lamp assembly snaps into place.

Electrical System

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The vehicle's electrical wiring circuits are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

⚠ Danger

Fuses and circuit breakers are marked with their ampere rating. Do not exceed the specified amperage rating when replacing fuses and circuit breakers. Use of an oversized fuse or circuit breaker can result in a vehicle fire. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

To check a fuse, inspect the silver-coloured metal band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Replace a blown fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

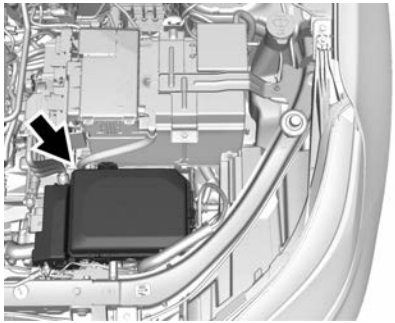
Note

Spare fuses are provided in the engine compartment fuse panel. Replace any used fuse as soon as possible.

In an emergency if a fuse is blown, fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

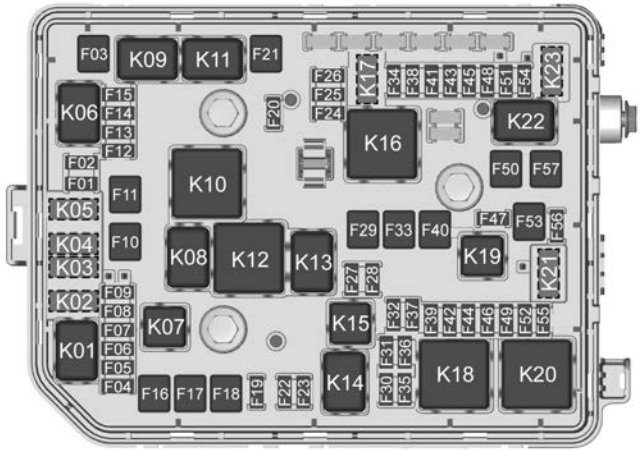
There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel which can be used to remove fuses from the fuse panel.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block



To remove the fuse panel cover, squeeze the clips on the cover and lift it straight up. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *226*.

Caution
Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
F01	Front/Rear washer pump
F02	Air conditioning clutch
F03	Starter solenoid 1
F04	Automatic headlamp levelling
F05	Left high-beam headlamp
F06	Right high-beam headlamp
F07	-
F08	Horn

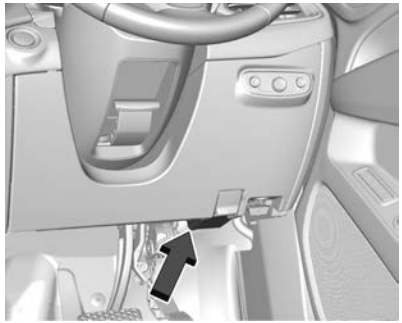
Fuses	Usage
F09	-
F10	-
F11	Diesel fuel heater (diesel only)
F12	Engine control module
F13	Ignition coils
F14	Lambda sensor 2
F15	Lambda sensor 1
F16	-
F17	-
F18	-
F19	Front wiper speed/ Control
F20	Engine control module
F21	Starter solenoid 2
F22	Right daytime running lamp
F23	Left daytime running lamp
F24	Engine control module
F25	-
F26	Transmission control module
F27	Front fog lamps
F28	-
F29	Shift control
F30	Heated Steering Wheel
F31	Engine control module / Transmission control module
F32	Transmission range control module
F33	Antilock brake valves
F34	FlexFuel sensor
F35	Australia trailer tow
F36	Variable functions
F37	Motorised headlamp
F38	NOx soot sensor (diesel only)
F39	-
F40	LD trailer
F41	Selective catalytic reduction module (diesel only)
F42	Interior Rear View Mirror
F43	-
F44	Passenger side ventilated seat
F45	Canister vent solenoid
F46	Driver side ventilated seat
F47	-
F48	Fuel system
F49	Steering column lock assembly
F50	DC DC converter 2
F51	Front heated seats

Fuses	Usage
F52	-
F53	Rear window demister
F54	Afterboil pump
F55	Mirror defroster
F56	Rear wiper
F57	Antilock brake pump

Relays	Usage
K01	High-beam headlamps
*K02	Horn
*K03	-
*K04	Front washer pump
*K05	Rear washer pump
K06	Air conditioning control
K07	-
K08	Front wiper speed
K09	Starter solenoid
K10	Fuel heater (diesel only)
K11	Starter pinion
K12	-
K13	-
K14	Headlamps/Daytime running lamps
K15	Fog lamps
*K16	Engine control module
*K17	Selective catalytic reduction (diesel only)
K18	-
K19	Fuel pump
K20	Rear window demister
*K21	Rear wiper control
*K22	Front wiper control
*K23	Coolant pump

* PCB relays are not serviceable.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse panel is located under the instrument panel on the driver side.

To access the fuses, press the tab on each end of the fuse box and remove the cover.

To reinstall the cover, align the tabs and press the cover in place. Ensure it clips-in securely.

Note
The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.



Fuses	Usage
F01	DC AC inverter
F02	Front windows
F03	Trailer brake
F04	Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning blower
F05	Body control module 2
F06	Cyber security
F07	-
F08	Body control module 3
F09	Amplifier
F10	-
F11	-
F12	-
F13	-
F14	-
F15	Transmission control module
F16	Front heated seats 1

Fuses	Usage
F17	Left data link connector
F18	Body control module 7
F19	Exterior mirror fold
F20	Body control module 1
F21	Body control module 4
F22	Body control module 6
F23	Electric steering column lock
F24	Sensing and diagnostic module
F25	Occupancy sensor
F26	-
F27	Power seats
F28	Rear windows
F29	-
F30	-

Fuses	Usage
F31	Steering wheel controls
F32	Body control module 8
F33	Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
F34	Passive entry, passive start
F35	Liftgate latch
F36	Shift charger
F37	Cigarette lighter
F38	OnStar
F39	Instrument panel USB
F40	Camera module/ Liftgate module
F41	Parking assist module
F42	Radio

Relays	Usage
K01	-
K02	Retained accessory power
K03	Liftgate
K04	-
K05	Logistics

Circuit Breakers	Usage
CB1	Front auxiliary power outlet
CB2	Auxiliary power outlet console

Rear Fuse Panel

The rear fuse panel is behind the side trim in the rear compartment.

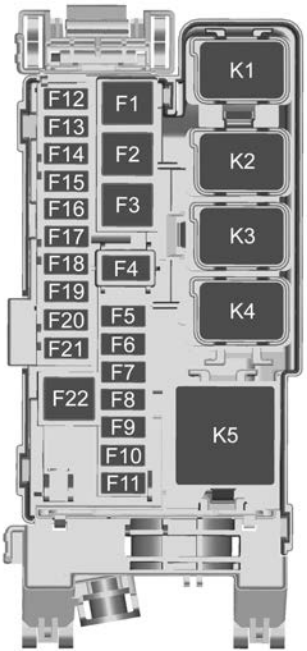


To access the fuse panel, carefully release the upper edge and remove the trim plate.



Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.



Fuses	Usage
F1	Exhaust fuel heater
F2	Liftgate
F3	Trailer auxiliary power
F4	Passenger power seat
F5	Memory seat module
F6	Sunroof
F7	Side blind spot alert
F8	Trailer reverse lamps
F9	Rear heated seat 1
F10	Park lamps
F11	Rear heated seat 2
F12	-
F13	Trailer park lamp
F14	Right trailer brake lamp/Turn signal lamp

Fuses	Usage
F15	Left park lamp
F16	Right park lamp
F17	Video processing module
F18	Left trailer brake lamp/Turn signal lamp
F19	All-wheel drive
F20	Lumbar
F21	Rear auxiliary power outlet
F22	Rear drive unit

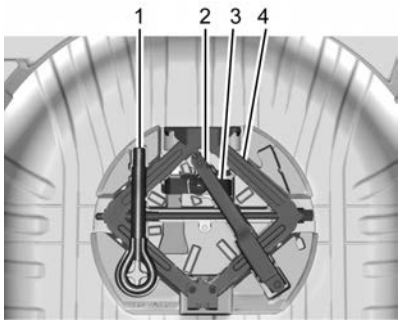
Relays	Usage
K1	Right trailer brake lamp / Turn signal lamp
K2	Trailer reverse lamps
K3	Left trailer brake lamp / Turn signal lamp
K4	Park lamps

Relays	Usage
K5	Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) (diesel only)

Vehicle Tools

Tools

The jack and tools are stored below the spare tyre.



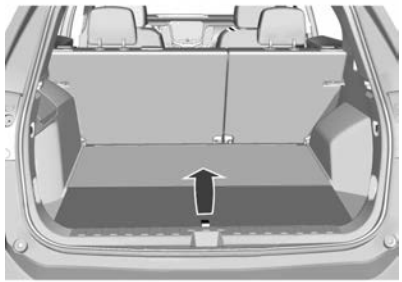
1. Tow Eye
2. Wheel Wrench
3. Strap
4. Jack

Note

The vehicle may be equipped with a tyre sealant and inflator kit instead of a spare tyre and tools. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *263*.

To access the spare tyre and tools:

1. Open the liftgate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *17*.



2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.
3. Pull the load floor rearward to disengage the retaining clips and lift upward to remove.

4. Pull the rear edge of the spare tyre cover forward and then upward to remove it.
5. Turn the spare tyre retainer nut anticlockwise and remove the spare tyre. Place the spare tyre next to the tyre being changed.
6. Remove the jack and tools from their container and place them near the tyre being changed.

Wheels and Tyres

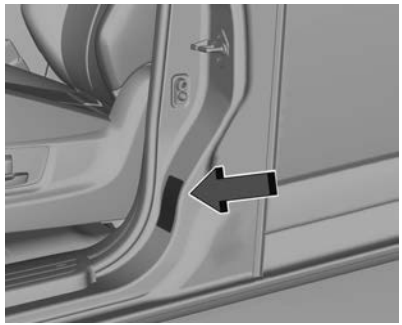
Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

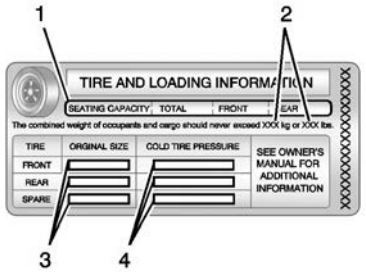
- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Also check the rims for damage. Contact a dealer if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard on the front passenger door frame and also in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *290*.



1. Seating capacity
2. Maximum vehicle capacity weight
3. Original tyre size
4. Cold inflation pressures

Note

- Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold, as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of the tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Check pressures when the vehicle has not been driven for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance or rough road driving, daily checking is recommended.

Tread Depth



Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.

- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

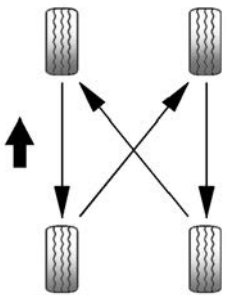
⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service.

Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on
- Driving habits
- Tyre pressures
- Wheel alignment and balance

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Vehicle payload capacity
- Maximum vehicle speed
- Tyre clearance
- Tyre chain clearance

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the vehicle warranty as well as the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly.
- The vehicle to pull to one side.
- Vibration.

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Tyre Chains are only permitted on front tyres of size; 225/65R17.

- Use low profile chains that add no more than 12mm thickness to the tyre tread and inner sidewall.
- Use chains that are the correct size for the tyres.
- Install the chains on the tyres of the front axle only.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
- If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and re-tighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.
- Chains must not be fitted to a compact / temporary spare tyre.
- Check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *290*

When using tyre chains the Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system may engage. Only disable the TCS and ESC if it is safe to do so. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *186*.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tyre to blow out while driving, especially if the tyres are maintained properly. See *Tyres* ⇨ *252*. If air goes out of a tyre, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tyre fails, the flat tyre creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tyre will cause permanent damage to the tyre. Re-inflating a tyre after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tyre that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorised tyre service centre repair or replace the flat tyre as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tyre. If it is used

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tyre.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *107*.

⚠ Warning

Changing a tyre can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tyre. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put the vehicle in P (Park).

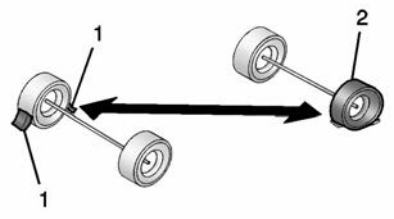
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
5. Place wheel blocks, if equipped, on both sides of the tyre at the opposite corner of the tyre being changed.

This vehicle may come with a jack and spare tyre or a tyre sealant and compressor kit. To use the jacking equipment to change a spare tyre safely, follow the instructions below. Then see *Tyre Changing* ⇨ *264*. To use the tyre sealant and compressor kit, see *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *257*.

When the vehicle has a flat tyre (2), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (1), if equipped.



1. Wheel Block (If Equipped)
2. Flat Tyre

The following information explains how to repair or change a tyre.

Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

⚠ Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *179*.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tyre could cause the tyre to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tyre to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ Warning

Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tyre sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

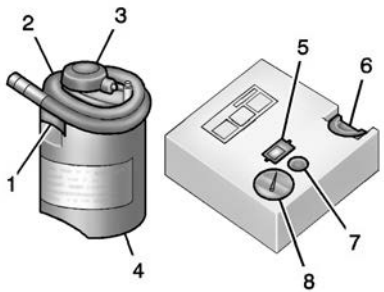
If this vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tyre or tyre changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tyre.

The tyre sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tyre.

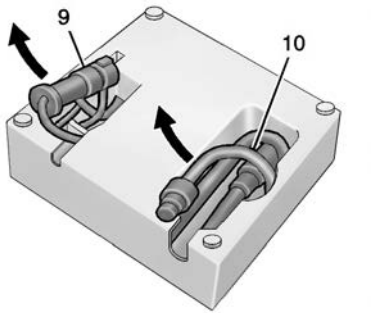
If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

Read and follow all of the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



1. Sealant Canister Inlet Valve
2. Sealant/Air Hose
3. Base of Sealant Canister
4. Tyre Sealant Canister
5. On/Off Button
6. Slot on Top of Compressor
7. Pressure Deflation Button
8. Pressure Gauge



9. Power Plug
10. Air Only Hose

Tyre Sealant

Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the tyre sealant canister (4).

Check the tyre sealant expiration date on the tyre sealant canister. The tyre sealant canister (4) should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement tyre sealant canisters are available at your local dealer.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre. After usage, the tyre sealant canister must be replaced.

Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tyre

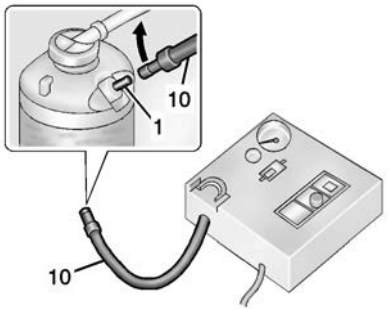
When using the tyre sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tyre faster.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *107*.

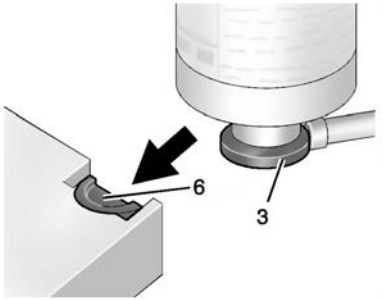
See *If a Tyre Goes Flat* ⇨ *256* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.

1. Remove the tyre sealant canister (4) and compressor from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *263*.
2. Remove the air only hose (10) and the power plug (9) from the bottom of the compressor.
3. Place the compressor on the ground near the flat tyre.

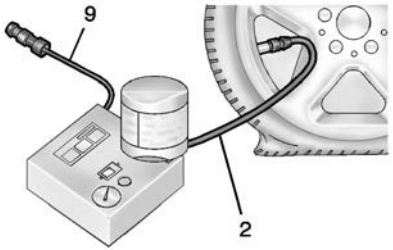


4. Attach the air only hose (10) to the sealant canister inlet valve (1) by turning it clockwise until tight.



5. Slide the base of the tyre sealant canister (3) into the slot on the top of the compressor (6) to hold it upright.

   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
6. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.



7. Attach the sealant/air hose (2) to the tyre valve stem by turning it clockwise until tight.
8. Plug the power plug (9) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *72*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
9. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
10. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

    The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tyre.

    The pressure gauge (8) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tyre, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air only.
11. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (8). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *252*.

    The pressure gauge (8) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven further. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

12. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the

tyre. Therefore, Steps 13–21 must be done immediately after Step 12.

Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

13. Unplug the power plug (9) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
14. Turn the sealant/air hose (2) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.
15. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.
16. Remove the tyre sealant canister (4) from the slot on top of the compressor (6).
17. Turn the air only hose (10) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre sealant canister inlet valve (1).
18. Turn the sealant/air hose (2) clockwise onto the sealant canister inlet valve (1) to prevent sealant leakage.
19. Return the air only hose (10) and power plug (9) back to their original storage location.



20. If the flat tyre was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister and place it in a highly visible location.

    Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tyre is repaired or replaced.
21. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
22. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
23. Stop at a safe location and check the tyre pressure. Refer to Steps 1–10 under “Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured).”

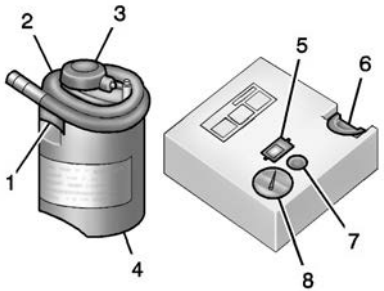
    If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre.

    If the tyre pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure.
24. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre, or vehicle.
25. Dispose of the used tyre sealant canister (4) at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.
26. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
27. After temporarily sealing a tyre using the tyre sealant and compressor kit, take the

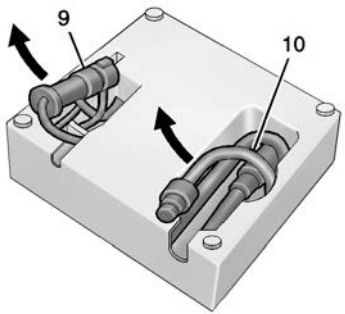
vehicle to an authorised dealer within 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tyre repaired or replaced.

Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured)

The kit includes:



1. Sealant Canister Inlet Valve
2. Sealant/Air Hose
3. Base of Sealant Canister
4. Tyre Sealant Canister
5. On/Off Button
6. Slot on Top of Compressor
7. Pressure Deflation Button
8. Pressure Gauge



9. Power Plug
10. Air Only Hose

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *107*.

See *If a Tyre Goes Flat* ⇨ *256* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the compressor from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *263*.
2. Remove the air only hose (10) and the power plug (9) from the bottom of the compressor.
3. Place the compressor on the ground near the flat tyre.

   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (10) to the tyre valve stem by turning it clockwise until tight.
6. Plug the power plug (9) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *72*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inflate the tyre with air only.
9. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (8). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *252*.

   The pressure gauge (8) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven further. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

10. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

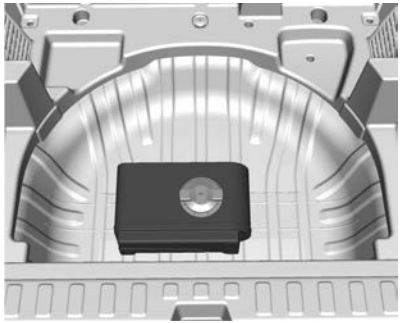
    Be careful while handling the compressor as it could be warm after usage.
11. Unplug the power plug (9) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
12. Turn the air only hose (10) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.
13. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.
14. Return the air only hose (10) and power plug (9) back to their original storage location.
15. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

The tyre sealant and compressor kit has accessory adapters in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that can be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

The tyre sealant and compressor kit is in a bag in the rear compartment storage area.

1. Open the liftgate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *17*.
2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.



3. Turn the retainer nut anticlockwise to remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit bag.
4. Remove the tyre sealant and compressor kit from the bag.

To store the tyre sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Tyre Changing

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

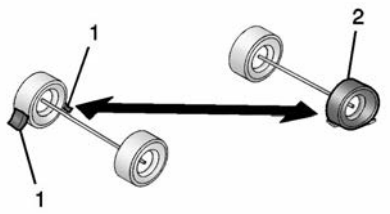
Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

The vehicle has a compact/temporary spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h as the tyre size is different to the other types on the vehicle.

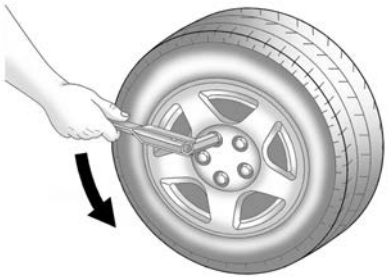
Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

1. Park the vehicle on a hard, level surface in a safe location.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter from the vehicle.
5. Place the vehicle in P (Park).



6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite (1) the flat tyre (2) with a suitable solid object.
7. Remove the spare tyre, jack and tools from the vehicle. See *Tools* ⇨ *251*.

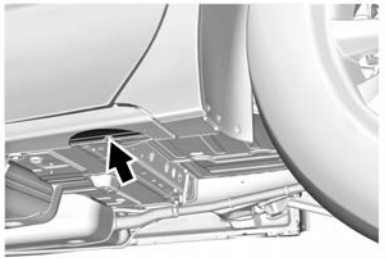


8. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove them yet.

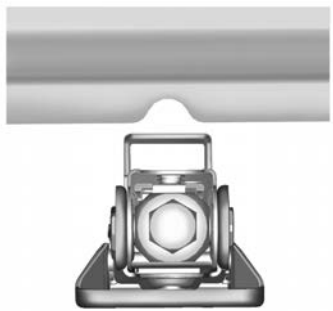
⚠ Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



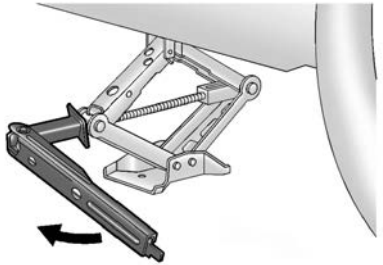
9. Position the jack lift head at the jack location nearest the flat tyre:



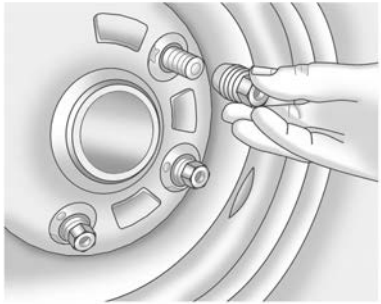
Locate the notch on the sheet metal weld flange. Place the centre of the jack lift head on the centre of the sheet metal notch.

The jack must not be used in any other position.

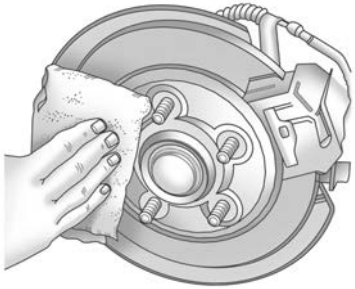
10. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack.



11. Raise the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the tyre to clear the ground.



12. Remove all of the wheel nuts.
13. Remove the flat tyre.



14. Remove any corrosion or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.
15. Place the compact spare tyre on the wheel-mounting surface.
16. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
17. Partially lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle anticlockwise.



18. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a criss-cross sequence, as shown.

19. Lower the jack all the way and remove the jack from under the vehicle.
20. Tighten the wheel nuts as tight as possible with the wheel wrench.

⚠ Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench. Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *290*.

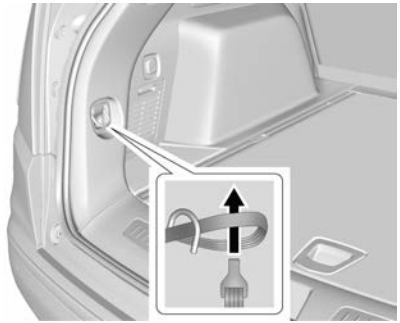
Storing a Flat Tyre

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tyre, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

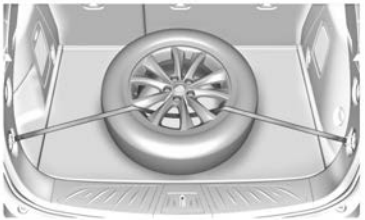
To store the flat tyre:

1. Return the jack and tools to their original storage location, except for the strap.
2. Replace the load floor.
3. Place the flat tyre, lying flat, in the rear storage compartment.



4. Route the loop end of the strap through one of the cargo tie-downs in the rear of the vehicle.

   Then route the hook through the loop and pull the strap to tighten it around the cargo tie-down.
5. Route the hook end of the strap through the wheel.
6. Attach one end of the strap to a cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.



7. Route the strap through the wheel, as shown.
8. Attach the other end of the strap to the other cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.
9. Tighten the strap

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tyre with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

Compact Spare Tyre

The compact spare tyre is designed for temporary use only.

The vehicle will perform differently with the spare tyre installed and it is recommended the vehicle speed be limited to 80 km/h.

Have the standard tyre repaired or replaced as soon as convenient and return the spare tyre to the storage area.

When using a compact spare tyre, the AWD (if equipped), ABS, and Traction Control systems may engage until the spare tyre is recognised by the vehicle, especially on slippery roads. Adjust driving to reduce possible wheel slip.

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

Do not mix the compact spare tyre or wheel with other wheels or tyres. They will not fit. Keep the spare tyre and its wheel together.

Caution
Tyre chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and the chains. Do not use tyre chains on the compact spare.

Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery* ⇨ *238*.

If the battery has discharged, use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. The following steps must be followed to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

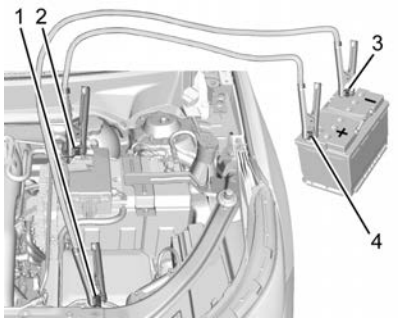
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



1. Discharged Battery Negative Earthing Stud
2. Discharged Battery Positive Terminal
3. Good Battery Negative Terminal
4. Good Battery Positive Terminal

The jump start negative earthing stud (1) for the discharged battery is to the left of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

The jump start positive terminal on the discharged battery (2) is in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The jump start positive terminal (3) and negative terminal (4) are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The positive jump start connection for the discharged battery is under a trim cover. Open the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. Set the parking brake firmly and place the shift lever in P (Park).

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Turn the ignition to off. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a torch if you need more light.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
6. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery.

8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) earthing stud for the discharged battery.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Start the vehicle with the discharged battery.
    - If it will not start after a few tries, the battery may need replacement.
    - If it does start, allow it to idle for several minutes and then remove the jumper cables as described below.

Jumper Cable Removal

Caution
If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

Towing the Vehicle

Caution
Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not lash or hook to suspension components. Use the proper straps around the tyres to secure the vehicle. Do not drag a locked wheel/tyre. Use tyre skates or dollies under any locked wheel/tyre while loading the vehicle. Do not use a sling type lift to tow the vehicle. This could damage the vehicle.

Caution
If the vehicle cannot be shifted into Neutral (N), do not use the tow eye to tow the vehicle. Vehicle damage may occur.

Use only a flatbed tow truck for towing a disabled vehicle. Never use a sling type lift or damage will occur. Use ramps to help reduce approach angles if necessary.
A towed vehicle should have its drive wheels off the ground.

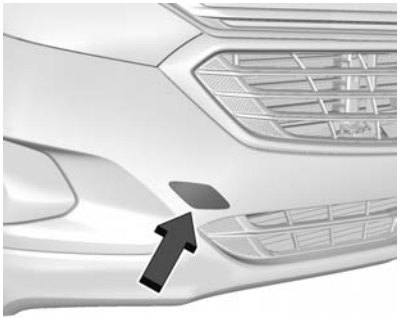
Consult a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Caution
Improper use of the tow eye can cause vehicle damage. Use caution and low speeds to prevent damage to the vehicle.

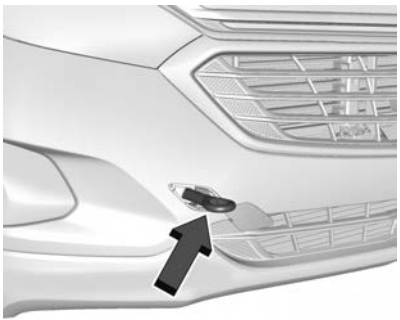
The vehicle is equipped with a tow eye. Only use the tow eye to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed car carrier from a flat road surface. Do not use the tow eye to pull the vehicle from snow, mud, or sand.

The tow eye is stored with the spare tyre tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *251*.

Front Tow Eye



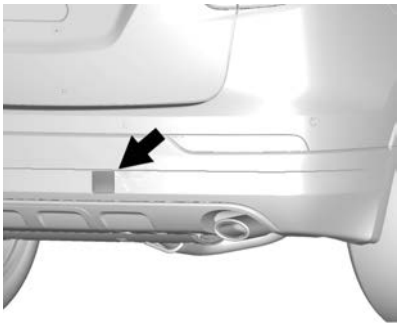
Carefully open the cover by using the small notch.



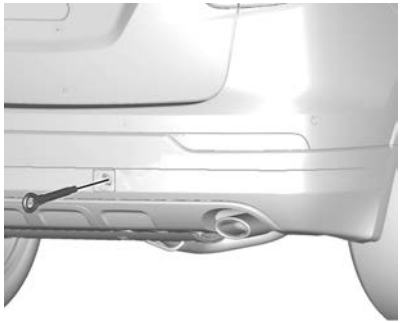
Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened.

When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Rear Tow Eye



Carefully open the cover by using the small notch.



Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened.

When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors lubricated by a Holden Dealer.

Caution
Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Note

For certain body colours, some variation in gloss and colour may exist in the engine bay and on the underside of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper, when washing the vehicle.

Shutter System



The vehicle may have a shutter system designed to help increase fuel economy. Keep the shutter system clean for proper operation.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution
Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Door Drain Holes

- Clear drain holes at the bottom of the door panels from dirt and other foreign materials which could trap water inside the panels.
- Clean clogged drain holes with a plastic pin or peg.
- Avoid scratching the paint work.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution
Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Vehicle Graphics

Care for your vehicle graphics like you would any fine paint finish.

Wash Regularly

- Wash whenever the vehicle appears dirty. Contaminants allowed to remain on the graphic may be more difficult to remove during cleaning.
- Rinse off as much dirt and grit as possible first with a spray of water. See *'Difficult Contaminants'* below for spot cleaning of bird droppings, tar, etc.
- Use a wet, non-abrasive detergent and a soft, clean cloth or sponge.
- Rinse thoroughly with clean water. To reduce water spotting, immediately use a silicone squeegee to remove water and finish with a clean microfibre cloth.

Caution

It is not recommended to apply wax or other similar coatings on vehicle graphics.

Automated Car Washes

Touchless car washes are the best for graphic care. Use of brush car washes (depending upon the frequency and quality of brush) may cause dulling, scratching or lift the edge of the graphics.

Pressure Washing

Although hand washing is the preferred cleaning method, pressure washing may be used under these conditions:

- Ensure the water pressure is kept below 1400 kPa (2000 psi).
- Keep the water temperature below 80°C.
- Use a spray nozzle with a 40° wide angle spray pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at least 300 mm away from, and perpendicular (at 90°) to, the graphic.

Caution

Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle of less than 90° to the graphic may lift the edges of the film.

Difficult Contaminants

Soften difficult contaminants such as bug splatter, bird droppings, tree sap and similar contaminants by soaking them for several minutes with very hot, soapy water. Rinse thoroughly and dry. If further cleaning is needed, try a product such as Bug and Tar Remover or a Citrus Base Cleaner by testing in an inconspicuous area to ensure no damage to the graphics before applying to the affected area.

Isopropyl alcohol (IPA) mixed two parts IPA to 1 part water or denatured alcohol may also help.

- Spot-clean the contaminants.
- Do not use rough scrubbing or abrasive tools which will scratch the film.
- Wash and rinse off all residue immediately.

Fuel Spills

Wipe off immediately to avoid degrading the vinyl and adhesive. Then wash, rinse and dry as described in *'Wash Regularly'* as soon as possible.

Film Restoration

The following restoration recommendations will help keep your vehicle wraps looking their best:

- Do not use any abrasive polishes or cutting compounds.
- Do not use any polishing or wax products on matte or textured films.
- If there is wax or any wax residue on the surface, remove with an all-purpose cleaner.

The following table shows some available products to help restore your vehicle graphics.

Note

Before using, always test and approve in an inconspicuous area.

Film or Finish Type	Product or Solution
Smooth Gloss Texture	3M™ Perfect-It™ Show Car Paste Wax 39526
Matte or Satin Texture	Isopropyl alcohol and water (2:1 ratio)
Matte White (1080-M10) Carbon Fibre White (1080-CF10)	Based on the type/degree of contamination, use one of more of these solutions, in the order shown, to remove any build-up: 1. Hot, soapy water solution 2. Isopropyl alcohol (IPA) and water (ratio 2:1) 3. Simple Green® All-Purpose Cleaner 4. Household chlorine bleach; followed by IPA/water. 5. Mineral spirits; followed by IPA/water
Carbon Fibre or Brushed Metal Texture	3M™ Tyre Restorer or Meguiar's Natural Shine Protectant
Carbon Fibre Black (1080-CF12)	Meguiar's Ultimate Black Plastic Restorer

Note

The products listed are examples and may not be available. Use this table as a guide if an equivalent product is required.

Caution

Do not allow the cleaning solution to soak on the surface; immediately rinse with clear water.

Store Indoors or Under Cover Whenever Possible

Just like paint, vinyl graphics are degraded by prolonged exposure to sun and atmospheric pollutants, particularly if they are applied to horizontal surfaces such as the bonnet and roof.

Whenever possible, store the vehicle in a garage, or at least in a shaded area during the day. At night protect the vehicle from dew or rain, which may contain acidic pollutants (a common problem in many large

metropolitan areas). When a garage is not available, consider using a cloth car cover at night.

If your graphics start to discolour or turn brown, immediately remove the graphics from the vehicle to avoid staining the underlying paint.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Newspapers or dark garments can transfer colour to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners on any switches or controls. Remove cleaners quickly.

Before using cleaners, read and follow all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, open the doors and windows to get proper ventilation.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with too much pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. A concentrated soap solution will create streaks and attract dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. If necessary, use a commercial glass cleaner after cleaning with plain water.

Caution
To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window demister.

Cleaning the windscreen with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with water and mild soap.

Coated Mouldings

Coated mouldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating vacuum brush attachment is being used, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean, lint-free colourfast cloth with water. Microfibre cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the centre. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any colour transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colourfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

After cleaning, use a paper towel to blot excess moisture.

High Gloss Surfaces and Information Displays

Use a microfibre cloth on high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays. First, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that can scratch the surface. Then gently clean by rubbing with a microfibre cloth. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces

Use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windscreen under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

The original equipment and Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.

Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Do not use a floor mat if the vehicle is not equipped with a floor mat retainer on the driver side floor.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mat



The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place. Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 283

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 283

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the intervals as specified.

See your Service & Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol
Engine oil	0W-20 or 5W-30 dexos (dexos™ 1 Gen 2)	0W-20 or 5W-30 dexos (dexos™ 1 Gen 2)
Coolant	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant	
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI	
Differential oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer	
Transfer case oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer	
Brake fluid	DOT 3 hydraulic brake fluid	

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 285
Engine Identification 285
Identification Labels 286
Service Parts Identification . . . 286

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 287
Vehicle Weight 288
Vehicle Dimensions 289
Capacities and Specifications 290
Tyre Pressure 290

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

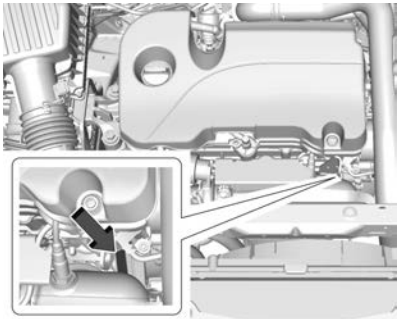


The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on the floor pan, under a cover in the floor covering, in front of the driver's seat.

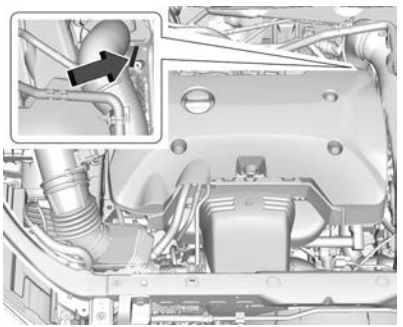
The VIN is also embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen.

Engine Identification

The engine serial number is located on the engine cylinder block. A label is also affixed to the engine as a secondary means of engine identification.



1.5 L Petrol Engine

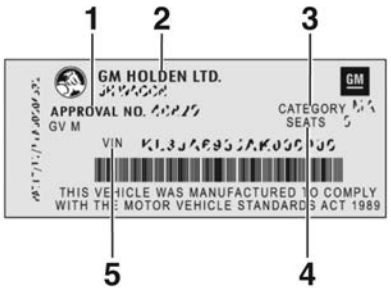


2.0 L Petrol Engine

Identification Labels

Compliance Label

The vehicle compliance label is located on the front of the front passenger's door frame.



Example only

Information on the compliance label:

1 : Approval number.

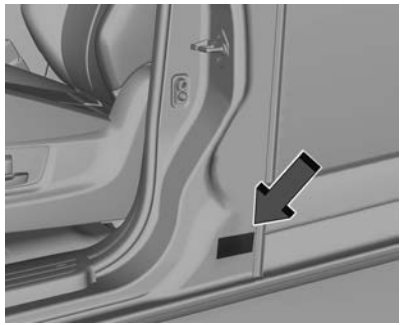
2 : Manufacturer and vehicle model.

3 : Category.

4 : Number of seats.

5 : Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Built Date Label



An identification label is located on the lower portion of the front passenger's door frame. The label shows the Vehicle Built Date and VIN.

Service Parts Identification

There may be a large barcode on the certification label on the centre pillar that you can scan for the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options

If there is not a large barcode on this label, then you will find this same information on a label inside the glove box.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol
Engine	1490 cc	1998 cc
Engine power and torque	Refer to holden.com.au	
Fuel type	Petrol	
Octane rating (RON)*		
Recommended:	Regular unleaded 91	Premium unleaded 95**
Possible:	Premium unleaded 95 or higher	Premium unleaded 98
Ethanol compatibility	E10	

*: For further information see *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *215*.

**: The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a small reduction in performance may be noticed.

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum Vehicle Carrying Capacity

Seating capacity and maximum vehicle carrying capacity for your vehicle are shown on the tyre placard located on the front passenger door frame. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *252*.

Note

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle Loads” later in this section.

Axle loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
1175	1200

Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

Variant	Length	Width Excl. Mirrors	Height	Wheelbase	Track: Front	Track: Rear
LS	4652	1843	1661	2725	1580	1581
LT	4652	1843	1661	2725	1576	1577
LTZ FWD	4652	1843	1688	2725	1570	1571
LTZ AWD, LTZ-V	4652	1843	1697	2725	1568	1570

The above figures are based on design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol
Engine Oil (Refill incl. filter)	4.0 L	FWD: 4.7 L AWD: 5.7 L
Coolant	6.6 L	7.8 L
Fuel Tank	FWD: 55.0 L AWD: 59.0 L	
Wheel Nut Torque	140 Nm	

All capacities are approximate

Tyre Pressure

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure					
		Front		Rear		Spare	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
225/65 R17 SL 102V	17 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	—	—
225/60 R18 SL 100V	18 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	—	—
235/50 R19 SL 99V	19 x 7.5J	240	35	240	35	—	—
T125/70 R17 SL 98M	17 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	420	60

Customer Information

Customer Information
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 291
Owner Assistance 292

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 293
Cybersecurity 294
Event Data Recorders 294

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos, Dexron, DexCool

Dexos®, Dexron®, and Dexcool® and their associated logos are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod touch®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Android

Android™ and GooglePlay™ are trademarks of Google Inc.

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST (except Victorian public holidays)

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O. VIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven or used. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle or to help GM improve safety or features. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Cybersecurity

GM collects information about the use of your vehicle including operational and safety related information. We collect this information to provide, evaluate, improve, and troubleshoot our products and services and to develop new products and services. The protection of vehicle electronics systems and customer data from unauthorised external electronic access or control is important to GM. GM maintains appropriate security standards, practices, guidelines and controls aimed at defending the vehicle and the vehicle service ecosystem against unauthorised electronic access, detecting possible malicious activity in related networks, and responding to suspected cybersecurity incidents in a timely, coordinated and effective manner. Security incidents could impact your safety or compromise your private data. To minimise security risks, please do not connect your vehicle electronic systems to unauthorised devices or connect your vehicle to any unknown or untrusted networks (such as Bluetooth, WIFI or similar technology). In the event that you suspect any security incident impacting your data or the safe operation of your vehicle, please stop operating your vehicle and contact your dealer.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defence of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 222
Accessory Power 177
Add-On Electrical Equipment . . . 220
Adjustments
  Lumbar, Front Seats 37
  Seat, Initial Drive 35
Advanced Parking Assist 202
Agreements
  Trademarks and License 154
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 232
Air Conditioning 163, 165
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 169
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 169
Air Intake 169
Air Vents 169
Airbag System
  Check 53
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 52
Airbags
  Curtain 51
  Front 50
  Readiness Light 83
  Side 50
Airbags (cont'd)
  System Check 49
Alarm
  Vehicle Security 22
Alert
  Lane Change 210
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 210
All-Wheel Drive 182, 239
AM-FM-DAB Radio 118
Anchor Fittings
  Top Tether 57
Antenna
  Multi-band 121
Antilock Brake System (ABS) . . . 183
  Warning Light 86
Appearance Care
  Exterior 273
  Interior 279
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 148
Armrest
  Rear Seat 44
Audio
  Bluetooth 125
Automatic
  Door Locks 15
  Engine Start/Stop Feature 177
  Headlamp System 106

Automatic (cont'd)
Transmission 179
Transmission Fluid 232
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 181
Auxiliary Jack 125
Avoiding Untrusted Media
Devices 121

B

Battery 238
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver 110
Jump Starting 269
Power Protection 110
Blade Replacement, Wiper 239
Bluetooth
Overview 143
Bluetooth Audio 125
Bonnet 224
Brake
Parking, Electric 183
System Warning Light 85
Brakes 237
Antilock 183
Assist 185
Fluid 237
Braking System
Front Pedestrian (FPB) 208
Break-In, New Vehicle 174
Bulb Replacement
Front Turn Signal and Fog
Lamps 242
Halogen Bulbs 241
Headlamps 241, 242
High Intensity Discharge
(HID) Lighting 241
Licence Plate Lamps 243
Taillamps 243
Buying New Tyres 254

C

Calibration 72
Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 193
Capacities and
Specifications 290
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 179
Liftgate 17
Cargo
Cover 61
Tie-Downs 63
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Centre Console Storage 61
Chains, Tyre 255
Charging
Wireless 75
Charging System Light 84
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction
Indicator) 84
Child Restraint Installation
Locations 57
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 54
Installation Locations 57
ISOFIX 58
Older Children 54
Systems 55
Circuit Breakers 244
Cleaning
Exterior Care 273
Interior Care 279
Climate Control Systems 163
Dual Automatic 165
Clock 72
Cluster, Instrument 78
Compact Spare Tyre 268
Compartments
Storage 59
Compass 72

Compressor Kit, Tyre Sealant 257
Control
Hill Descent 188
Traction and Electronic Stability 186
Control Light
Hill Descent 87
Control System
Emission 222
Controls
Steering Wheel 114
Coolant
Engine 233
Engine Temperature Gauge 82
Cooling 163, 165
Courtesy Lamps 109
Cover
Cargo 61
Coverage Explanations 137
Cruise Control 189
Light 91
Cupholders 59
Curtain Airbag System 51
Customer-installed Equipment, Notices 53
Cybersecurity 294

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Data Recorders, Event 294
Database Coverage Explanations 137
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 106
Delayed Locking 15
Destination 130
Dimensions
Vehicle 289
Dome Lamps 109
Door
Delayed Locking 15
Locks 13
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 182, 239
Driver Assistance Systems 192
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 91
Driving
Environment 171
Off-Road 172
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 165

E

Electric Parking Brake 183
Electric Parking Brake Light 86
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 220
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 245
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 244
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 247
Rear Fuse Panel 249
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 89
Emission Control System 222
Emission Information 222
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 232
Automatic Start/Stop Feature 177
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 84
Compartment Overview 226
Coolant 233
Coolant Temperature Gauge 82
Exhaust 179
Oil Life System 231
Oil Pressure Light 89

Engine (cont'd)
Overheating 235
Power Messages 98
Starting 176
Engine Data 287
Engine Identification 285
Entry Lighting 110
Event Data Recorders 294
Exit Lighting 110
Exterior Lamp Controls 104
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 110

F

Filter, Engine Air Cleaner 232
Flashers, Hazard Warning 107
Flat Tyre 256
Changing 264
Floor Mats 282
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 232
Brakes 237
Washer 236
Fog Lamps 108
Folding Mirrors 26
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 204
Front Airbag System 50
Front Fog Lamp Light 91
Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System 208
Front Seat Position Seats Adjustment 35
Front Seats
Adjustment 35
Heated and Ventilated 40
Fuel 214
Filling the Tank 215
Gauge 81
Low Fuel Warning Light 89
Recommended 215
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 245
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 244
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 247
Rear Fuse Panel 249

G

Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature ...82
Fuel 81
Odometer 80
Gauges (cont'd)
Speedometer 80
Tachometer 81
Trip Odometer 80
Warning Lights and Indicators 77
General Information
Vehicle Care 222
Global Positioning System (GPS) 135
Glove Box 59
Guidance
Problems with the Route 136

H

Halogen Bulbs 241
Hazard Warning Flashers 107
Head Restraints 32
Headlamp Leveling Control 107
Headlamps 242
Automatic 106
Bulb Replacement 241
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 106
Front Turn Signal and Fog Lamps 242
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 241

Headlamps (cont'd)
High-Beam On Light 90
High/Low Beam Changer 106
Lamps On Reminder 91
Heated
Rear Seats 44
Steering Wheel 68
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 40
Heated Mirrors 26
Heating 165
High-Beam On Light 90
Hill Descent Control (HDC) 188
Hill Descent Control Light 87
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 185
Horn 69
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 45
HVAC 163, 165

I

Identification Labels 286
If the System Needs Service 137
Ignition Positions 174
Indicator
Pedestrian Ahead 88
Vehicle Ahead 87
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 54
Information
Service 283
Instrument Cluster 78
Instrument Panel Overview 4
Interior Rear view Mirrors 27
Introduction 2
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 58

J

Jack
Auxiliary 125
Jump Starting 269

K

Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 8
Keys 7

L

Lamps
Courtesy 109
Daytime Running (DRL) 106
Dome 109
Exterior Controls 104
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 110
Lamps (cont'd)
Licence Plate 243
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 84
On Reminder 91
Reading 109
Taillamps 243
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 210
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 212
Lane Keep Assist Light 87
LED Lighting 242
Leveling Control
Headlamp 107
Liftgate 17
Lighting
Entry 110
Exit 110
Illumination Control 109
LED 242
Lights
Airbag Readiness 83
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 86
Brake System Warning 85
Charging System 84
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 84
Cruise Control 91

Lights (cont'd)
Electric Parking Brake 86
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 89
Engine Oil Pressure 89
Front Fog Lamp 91
High-Beam On 90
High/Low Beam Changer 106
Hill Descent Control 87
Lane Keep Assist 87
Low Fuel Warning 89
Seat Belt Reminders 82
Security 90
Service Electric Parking Brake 86
Traction Off 88
Lock
Steering Column 23
Locks
Automatic Door 15
Delayed Locking 15
Door 13
Lockout Protection 16
Safety 16
Low Fuel Warning Light 89
Lumbar Adjustment 37
Front Seats 37

M

Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 169
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 283
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 84
Manual Mode 181
Map Data Updates 137
Maps 129
Media
Avoiding Untrusted Devices .. 121
Memory Seats 38
Messages
Engine Power 98
Vehicle 98
Vehicle Speed 98
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 27
Folding 26
Heated 26
Manual Rearview 27
Power 25
Mirrors, Interior Rear view 27
Multi-band Antenna 121

N

Navigation
Destination 130
Using the System 126
Navigation Symbols 129
New Vehicle Break-In 174
Notices for Customer-installed Equipment 53

O

Odometer 80
Trip 80
Off-Road 172
Driving 172
Oil
Engine 229
Engine Oil Life System 231
Pressure Light 89
Older Children, Restraints 54
Operation
Fog Lamps 108
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System 163
Outlets
Power 72
Overheating, Engine 235
Overview 111
Instrument Panel 4

Owner Assistance 292

P

Parking 178
Parking Assist 198
  Advanced 202
Passenger Compartment Air
  Filter 169
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator 88
Personalisation
  Vehicle 99
Phone
  Apple CarPlay and
    Android Auto 148
  Bluetooth 143
Port
  USB 121
Positioning
  Vehicle 136
Power
  Mirrors 25
  Outlets 72
  Protection, Battery 110
  Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 177
  Seat Adjustment 36
  Windows 27
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 48
Pressure
  Tyre 290
Privacy
  Vehicle Data Recording 293
Problems with Route
  Guidance 136

R

Radio Data System (RDS) 120
Radio Reception 120
Radios
  AM-FM-DAB Radio 118
Reading Lamps 109
Rear Seat Armrest 44
Rear Seats 41
  Heated 44
Rear Storage 60
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 193
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 71
Rearview Mirrors 27
  Automatic Dimming 27
Reclining Seatbacks 37
Recognition
  Voice 137
Recommended
  Fuel 215
Recommended Fluids and
  Lubricants 283
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)
  System 8
Remote Vehicle Start 12
Replacement Parts
  Airbags 53
Replacing Airbag System 53
Replacing Seat Belt System
  Parts after a Crash 48
Restraints
  Where to Put 56
Retained Accessory
  Power (RAP) 177
Roof
  Sunroof 29
Roof Rack System 64
Rotation, Tyres 254

S

Safety Locks 16
Sealant Kit, Tyre 257
Seat Belts
  Care 48
  Child Restraints 57
  How to Wear Seat Belts
    Properly 45
  Reminders 82
  Replacing after a Crash 48
  Three-Point 45

Seat Belts (cont'd)
Use During Pregnancy 48
Seats
Adjustment, Front 35
Head Restraints 32
Heated and Ventilated Front 40
Heated, Rear 44
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 37
Memory 38
Position, Front 35
Power Adjustment, Front 36
Rear 41
Reclining Seatbacks 37
Security
Light 90
Vehicle Alarm 22
Service 169
Accessories and Modifications 222
Parts Identification 286
Service and Maintenance
Service Information 283
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 86
Service Information 283
Servicing System 137
Settings 149
Side Airbag System 50
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) . . . 210
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 108
Software Updates 117
Spare Tyre
Compact 268
Specifications and Capacities 290
Speedometer 80
Start Assist, Hill 185
Start Vehicle, Remote 12
Starting the Engine 176
Steering 172
Heated Wheel 68
Wheel Adjustment 67
Wheel Controls 67
Steering Column Lock 23
Steering Wheel Controls 114
Storage
Rear 60
Storage Areas
Cargo Cover 61
Centre Console 61
Glove Box 59
Roof Rack System 64
Sunglasses 60
Umbrella 61
Storage Compartments 59
Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 263
Sun Visors 29
Sunglass Storage 60
Sunroof 29
Surround Vision System 196
Symbols 3
Navigation 129
System
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) 204
Global Positioning 135
Roof Rack 64
Surround Vision 196
Systems
Driver Assistance 192

T

Tachometer 81
Taillamps 243
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 290
Theft-Deterrent Systems 24
Three-Point Seat Belt 45
Time 72
Tools 251
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 57

Towing
Trailer 216
Vehicle 271
Traction
Off Light 88
Traction Control/Electronic
Stability Control 186
Trademarks and
License Agreements 154, 291
Trailer
Towing 216
Transmission
Automatic 179
Fluid, Automatic 232
Tread Depth 253
Trip Odometer 80
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 108
Tyre Pressure 290
Tyres 252
Buying New Tyres 254
Chains 255
Changing 264
Compact Spare 268
If a Tyre Goes Flat 256
Pressure 252
Rotation 254
Tyres (cont'd)
Sealant and
Compressor Kit 257
Sealant and Compressor
Kit, Storing 263
Wheel Alignment and Tyre
Balance 255

U

Umbrella Storage 61
Updates
Map Data 137
Software 117
USB Port 121
Using the Navigation System ...126
Using the System 115
Using This Manual 3

V

Vehicle
Alarm System 22
Identification Number (VIN) ... 285
Messages 98
Personalisation 99
Remote Start 12
Speed Messages 98
Towing 271
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 87
Vehicle Care
Storing the Tyre Sealant
and Compressor Kit 263
Tyre Pressure 252
Vehicle Data Recording and
Privacy 293
Vehicle Dimensions 289
Vehicle Identification
Labels 286
Vehicle Positioning 136
Vehicle Security
Steering Column Lock 23
Vehicle Weight 288
Ventilation, Air 169
Visors 29
Voice Recognition 137

W

Warning
Brake System Light 85
Caution and Danger 3
Warning Lights, Gauges, and
Indicators 77
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 107
Washer Fluid 236
Weights
Vehicle 288

Wheels
Alignment and Tyre Balance 255
Where to Put the Restraint 56
Windows 27
Power 27
Windshield
Replacement 240
Wiper/Washer 69
Wiper Blade Replacement 239
Wipers
Rear Washer 71
Wireless Charging 75